

V O Y A G E
TO THE
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE,
TOWARDS THE
ANTARCTIC POLAR CIRCLE,
AND
ROUND THE WORLD:

BUT CHIEFLY INTO THE
COUNTRY OF THE HOTTENTOTS AND CAFFRES,
FROM THE YEAR 1772, TO 1776.

BY ANDREW SPARRMAN, M.D.

PROFESSOR OF PHYSIC AT STOCKHOLM, FELLOW OF THE ROYAL
ACADEMY OF SCIENCES IN SWEDEN, AND INSPECTOR
OF ITS CABINET OF NATURAL HISTORY.

TRANSLATED FROM THE SWEDISH ORIGINAL.

WITH PLATES.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

V O L II.

P E R T H:

PRINTED BY R. MORISON JUNIOR,
FOR R. MORISON AND SON, BOOKSELLERS, PERTH; G. MUR-
DIE, BOOKSELLER, EDINBURGH; AND J. LACK-
INGTON, MOORFIELDS, LONDON.

V O Y A G E

CASE OF GOOD HOME

ANALYTICAL POLAR CIRCLES

H O L D I N G S

CASE OF THE



C O N T E N T S.

C H A P. X.

Journey from Sea-cow-river to Little Sunday-River.

Set out on their journey. Camtours-river. Description of the Hottentot Capt. Kies, who is treated sans ceremonie by the author's Hottentot Plattje. A farmer's account of the great drought, and of a horde of Caffres he had met with on the road. Galge-bosch. No water to be had. Van Staade's river. Are visited by some Gonaquas Hottentots. Description of the persons, dress, &c. of these people. Throw their javelins at a mark. Not remarkable for dexterity in this point. A grain called holcus sorgum, which yields an inebriating liquor. Their waggon in danger of being blown up into the air, from their having inadvertently set fire to the grass. Carousal of hunters. The salt-pans. Description of the crimex paradoxus, or leaf-insect. Mr Immelman spits blood. Is in danger of being tossed by buffalos. Guinea-hens. Appearance of the banks of Sunday-river. Hire several Boshies-men to attend them in their expedition. Give chase to an uncommon species of wood-swine. Description of these animals. Hottentot or bastard Caffres. Their dance and song. Voluptuous practices of the youths of both sexes during dancing. Envenomed wound. Curious milk baskets. Method of milking. Circumcision practised by these people. Conclusion of the milking by singing and dancing. The author turns conjuror. Bastard-Caffre conjuror well paid. Fox-tails for warm weather. Buffalo-lice, p. 27.

C H A P. XI.

Journey from Little Sunday's-river to Boshies-mans-river.

Concerto of Lions. Their roaring described. Preparations made against an attack from these beasts. Animals fear the lion by instinct, and perceive him at a distance, even when he does not roar. Lions few in number, compared with other animals. Not so bold since the Dutch have introduced the use of fire-arms into that part of Africa. Do not immediately kill a man, except in case of resistance. Neither do they attack any animal openly, excepting when irritated or very hungry. Measure the length of their leap, when they have missed their prey by leaping over it or short of it. Lurk chiefly near rivers. Scared away by the noise made with an ox-whip. Singular escape of a Hottentot from a lion. Lion frequently betrays marks of cowardice. Instance of a lion being shot with its prey lying under it untouched. In general content with wounding its prey, if it be of the human species. The cause of this investigated. Ludicrous situation of a farmer pursued by a lion. Great strength of this animal. Not strong enough, however, to overpower the buffalo, without having recourse to art. Artful expedient of one for carrying off a buffalo. Instance of a buffalo's keeping five lions at bay. Lion easily torn in pieces by a dozen farmer's dogs. Horses fond of hunting lions and

and other fierce animals. The chase of the flen described. Colonel's hunt the n with great eagerness. Not hard to kill with guns. Its hide tender and penetrable. Their principal Hottentot marksman shoots a buffalo. Description of the buffalo. Its ears supposed by the Hottentots to be torn by evil spirits. A treacherous and cruel animal. Fond of lying down in the water, or wallowing in the mire. Buffalo-calf. The calves might be brought up tame. The flesh good eating. Cannot be shot with balls composed of lead alone. The game wantonly destroyed in great abundance by some sportsmen. Gluttony of the Hottentots. Amuse themselves with cracking jests on their masters, in their own language. Smoke cow-dung in default of tobacco. Idle in the highest degree, and difficult to govern, p. 54.

C H A P. XII.

Journey from Bosbies-mans-river to Quammedacka.

Sneezing-wood in Niez-hout-kloof. The honorary degree of doctor conferred on the author in his absence. Butterfly-hunter in danger of being impaled by way of retribution. A buffalo-hunt. Nastiness of the Hottentots. Paint their cheeks black when they go a courting. Amorous combat between two tiger-cats. Ostrich-chiks. Rank water. Ridiculous neatness of a Dutchman. Description of the spring-hok. Leaps very high, and expands the white list on its back, when pursued. Very swift. Quammedacka well. The author looks out there for the two-horned rhinoceros. Kolbe never saw this animal in reality. The author's cruelty to some birds dying with thirst. Alarmed all night long by a lion. The raw root of a species of purslain very good eating, as is that of the Da-t'kai. Hottentots shoot two rhinoceroses. The manner in which they informed the author of it. The description and anatomy of the rhinoceros. The author and his friend in great danger from one. Meet a herd of elk-antelopes, and afterwards with a party of colonists, p. 86.

C H A P. XIII.

Journey from Quammedacka to Agter Bontjes-Hoogte.

Hunt a couple of lions. Ostriches nest. The male ostrich assists the female in the act of incubation. This bird's feathers made use of for chasing away the flies. Eggs used for pan-cakes, &c. but not equal to those of hens in goodness. Ostriches do not hide their eggs when pursued. Buffon criticised on this subject, as well as with respect to his account of this bird's skin. Its cry like the lion's roar. Alluded to by the prophet Micah. The young have no cry. Ostriches become very tame. Might be brought to bear burdens. Chiefly found in the carrow countries. Description of a buffalo-hunt. Ludicrous scene of the Hottentots loaded with this animal's flesh. Dismal situation of the author, when benighted, at a distance from his waggon, in a storm. Description of the gnu. Its classification. The gnu met with here very vicious. Manner of keeping Christmas-eve in the desert. Meet with some colonists. Ludicrous description of the dress and figure of the two travellers. Hippopotamus's skulls. The author indisposed. He and his party begin to want bread. Convulsive motions in the muscles of a dead hartbeest, p. 101.

C O N T E N T S.

C H A P. XIV.

Residence at Agter Brantjes-Hoogte.

Arrival at Agter Brantjes-Hoogte. Cattle out of doors all winter. Cold in these parts. Ravages committed by the Boshies-men here. Harrook made among them by the colonists. Snags-Hottentots. Their complexion and temper. Geographical observations on the country they inhabit. The Tambuki silver mines. Disquisition concerning the unicorn. The country of the Caffres. Their government and wars. The massacre of Heuppenaer and his party in this country. King Ruyter's craal. Ruyter's history, tyrannical behaviour and wars. Comparison between the respective modes of fighting of the Hottentots and Caffres. Slaves of the Christians more warlike than either, and much esteemed by the Caffres. Description of Camdeho. Roads from thence to the Cape. Plan formed for extending the journey. It proves abortive on many accounts. Delightful situation and fertility of Agter Brantjes-Hoogte. Happy lives of the farmers there. The foot made use of by them as an index to the road. Their commodious posture of sitting. Extreme moderation in furniture and dress. Their virtues. Friendly proposal from a female. New cure for the gout. Advantages of the medical art to mankind. Worms universally mistaken here for pulmonary complaints. The gnu. The viverra cristata, or grey jackal, uytjes- and common jackal. Description of the ratel. Its manner of plundering bees' nests. Very difficult to kill. The zerda, or animal anonyne of Buffon. Bruce's mistake concerning it rectified. Description of the honey-guide. Mistake in the Philos. Transf. rectified. The jerbua Capensis. The bleesmol, or mus Capensis. The zandmol, or mus Casser, resembles the rhinoceros. The talpa Asiatica, or variable mole, more properly the *orex aureus*, described. Answer to Dr Pallas's query. The gazels of this country described. The hartbeest and elk-antelope. The fat of this latter very fine. They migrate to the southward in great droughts. Chase of an elk-antelope. The beast sweats blood. Dangers of the chase in this country. The author's horse falls with him. The koedoe, or coudon. Pleasant mistake of Buffon concerning the name. The Cape-chamois, or gemsbok, somewhat resembles the elk of Kolbe. The blaauw-bok, bonte-bok, and gnu. The ree-bok, riet-ree-bok, vlak steen-bok, steen-bok, duyker-bok and klip-springer. A baboon hunt—the dogs shew more malice against this animal than against any other. Strictures on Buffon's opinion concerning the necessity of a meat-diet for the human species. Description of the camelopardalis. Defence of Hasselquist against Buffon. Pleasant opinion of the latter concerning the horns of oxen. Buffon convicted of setting the horns on the wrong head, p. 182.

C H A P. XV.

Journey from Agter Brantjes-Hoogte to the two Viscé-rivers, and Residence at those Places.

Departure from Agter Brantjes-Hoogte. Beauty in a desert. Shoot a tiger. Instance of a tiger being got the better of by a slave. Unwelcome visit from a large party of Caffres. Preparations for their reception. The conference. Their method of slaughtering their

C O N T E N T S.

their meat. Heaps of stones, probably antique monuments. Kok's-craal. Amazing swiftness of the Hottentots. Blockade of the sea-cows in their pits. Great danger from one of them. Cry of this animal described. A sea-cow shot by one of the party in his sleep. Her calf carried off and slaughtered. Description of it. The hippopotamus lives entirely on herbs and grass. Is sometimes seen in the sea, but cannot drink the salt water. Copulation, size, and method of catching these animals. Not slow in their pace. Medical virtues of their skulls. Anatomy of a young hippopotamus. Leaches of a new species about its anus. Disquisition on its different names. Proposals for catching and keeping these animals alive. The waggon in danger of being overturned by a rhinoceros in its flight. A rhinoceros hunt. A Hottentot coward becomes bold from sensibility. The fine scent of the Hottentots accounted for. Two of the Hottentots in the author's train shoot a rhinoceros asleep. Hottentot bribe. Instance of the peculiar turn of mind of these people. Love in a desert. Drowsiness the effect of love. Recipe for that passion. Billet-doux of a forester, p. 221.

C H A P. XVI.

Journey back to the Cape.

Rhinoceros hunt. Dangerous ride in the dark. Diabolical yell of a pack of hyenas. Conge of a Hottentot. Plettenberg's colony. Artifice of a hippopotamus to breathe in the water. Another of a colonist to cheat the government. The golden age restored among the Gunjeman Hottentots. Wealth of a female Gunjeman. Simplicity of their diet. Zwartkops-river. Boldness of three young lions. Damaquas Hottentots. The sea-cows go out to sea with the tide. The company scared by a buffalo, and lost in a wood. The travellers return to their old host, J. Kok. Inconvenience of feather beds. Red wine and oysters. Scorched serpents. The bulla achatina. A country in flames. Wagenboom river. The author loses his way on horseback in a dreadful storm of thunder and lightning. Method of converting grapes into raisins. Famine arising from the drought. Revisit Artaquas kloof. The author's collections hurt by the waggon's overturning. Valsche-rivier. Great scarcity of ploughshares in Africa, and of wrought iron in general. A battle royal between a Hottentot and his wife. A receipt to promote union in the married state. An imaginary gold-mine. The aloe plant discovered by a negro slave. Method of preparing the gum from it. The geitje, a highly venomous lizard. Dreadful consequences of its bite. Cured by a slave. Conjectures on its origin. Description of this animal. Systematical description of the lacerta Capensis. A very large species of lizard, and very difficult to kill. Description of a singular anonymous quadruped. A farmer murdered by his slaves. Surprising escape of his son. Cruelty of the colonists to their slaves, and horrid punishments inflicted on them. Public executions only serve to irritate the rest. Different dispositions of the slaves of different nations. Peculiar turn of mind of the Bngunese. The author returns by the way of Roode-zand. A lake newly discovered at Sneeuwberg. Brandy made from a species of Cactus. Arrival at the Cape, p. 254.

VOYAGE

TO THE

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE

C H A P. I.

Journey from Sea-cow-river to Little Sunday-river.

WE proceeded on our journey on the 1st of December, eastward from *Zee-koe-rivier*, and the following morning from *Cabeljaunew-rivier*, which was the last place we came to that was inhabited by christians. We reached at noon *Camtours-rivier*, at which place we baited.

Here a Hottentot captain, or rather a patriarch, exercised dominion over about fifty people; still however he was a sovereign in his way. He was an old little man, of the name of KIES. I should have been easily led at first sight to consider him as reigning merely over as at that time the company, in which we found him smoking his pipe consisted only of females; for the men (excepting a few who lay ill of a putrid fever) were all abroad, some of them hunting a lion, which had lately committed ravages among their herds; and the others, it was said, were gone to a great distance, for the purpose of gathering a certain succulent plant, which they used for chewing, either for the sake of killing the time, or because of its pleasant taste, and having the property of assuaging their hunger. Captain KIES, therefore, absolutely

absolutely refused our request; which was, that he would allow us some of his Hottentots as guides, who might likewise be a necessary assistance to us, and a reinforcement of our company in the journey we were about to make through the wilderness.

In the mean time, I could not help being rather ashamed of the indiscreet behaviour of my third Hottentot or marksman, PLATTJE; for although I had never seen him hitherto behave with the least impertinence or bluntness, but had observed, on the contrary, that he had always addressed these Hottentot patriarchs with some kind of respect, I now remarked, that immediately on our coming into the presence of a person of such great authority, without the least bow or ceremony of any kind, he went uninvited and sat himself down by his side, at the same time filling his pipe from the other's pouch, and calling about him for milk to drink. This behaviour, did not appear to be at all taken ill; on the contrary, they immediately brought him a cup of bagged milk. I remarked likewise at this time, as well as on my return hither, that KIES like Captain RUNDGANGER, whom I mentioned at page 171, of Volume I. always had his captain's baton in his hand or else close beside him; and this staff, was in every respect as plain and simple as RUNDGANGER's: but though KIES was in much better circumstances both as to the number of his people and of his cattle, yet he lived with his court and the rest of his subjects, one might almost say, in the open air; his palace consisted of a few poles set up sloping in the earth with a ragged mat thrown over them, which admitted consequently not only the wind in several places, but also the rain in wet weather. This shed, thus open on three sides, and in a great degree at the top, was, notwithstanding, useful enough at that time of the year, and in that warm climate. The winter, or properly speaking, the rainy season, would, probably, lay them under the necessity of providing themselves with a more sufficient dwelling.

We continued our journey that same day, proceeding towards *Loory-rivier*, where we took up our abode at night. Here we fell in with a farmer, who in his ox-waggon had followed the course of *Zondags-rivier* all the road

road from *Camdebo*; a country of that sort which I have described at page 175 of Volume I. under the denomination of *Carrow*. He told us, that this year, in which the drought was uncommonly great in all parts, it was remarkably so there, as scarcely a drop of rain had fallen in the space of eight months; but just as he was leaving those parts, several showers had fallen along the course of that river.

He, therefore, advised us against taking that road, as it was, in general, entirely unbeaten, arid, and rugged; and likewise, because both water and game were exceedingly scarce there. By means of this latter circumstance, his provisions were almost entirely spent, and he was just going to knock one of his draught oxen on the head, in order to procure food for himself and his suite, when two hartbeests very luckily came directly up to the waggon, in order to take a view of it, one of which he immediately killed.

This very same peasant had accidentally met with about an hundred wandering Caffres on this road. Their chief or patriarch, had proposed to sleep the first night together with the farmer in his waggon, who, on the other hand, should sleep with him in his tent the following night. This the farmer not agreeing to, the Caffre patriarch was so far from being displeased, that, on the contrary, he had killed an ox, and presented the farmer and his suite with a few fine pieces of beef. The boor likewise told me, that the Caffre cattle were uncommonly plump and in good case; at which he was the more amazed, as they were not turned out to graze till noon, and driven home very early. He, observed besides, that the Caffres fondled and talked to their cattle a good deal as they stood in the craal; no doubt, just as the Arabians do to their horses; which not a little tends towards their thriving, and making them brisk and lively, and at the same time more intelligent and tractable.

We baited on the 3d at noon near *Galge-bosch* a little wood which was much resorted to by lions, and still more by buffalos. I was in consequence more than ever uneasy about my cattle, as, though there was exceeding good pasturage on the spot, they had stolen away from it, and were amissing for several hours. In the mean

while, we were suspicious, that they had been scared away from the place by lions; but the fact turned out, that being very thirsty, they had strayed into a valley towards a pit full of very muddy water, where they were found. My Hottentots were of opinion, that cattle could find out water by the scent at a very great distance. I have heard some colonists say, that they suspected the same of the Hottentots, as they can discover water in emergencies better than any colonists; but this can be owing to nothing else than the Hottentots greater assiduity in this point, and to their being more in the practice of wandering about the fields, by which means they have acquired a particular faculty of tracing out this necessary article of life from certain peculiarities of situation, and sundry other circumstances.

In fact, we could find no water fit to drink ourselves; and it was late at night before, thirsty as we were, we reached a land-spring; which to our great mortification, we found dried up; so that there were only here and there in the mire a print of the buffalos feet deeper than ordinary, in which a little moisture was observable. We therefore dug deeper holes with our hands, and waited with all the patience we were masters of, till the water was collected in them, and could be taken out with the assistance of small basons. But it was not only as thick as hafty-pudding, but had acquired so rank a taste from the buffalos that had lain and wallowed in it, that even the Hottentots made wry faces at it; and our horses began to blow and snort at the strong buffalo-scent which affected their nostrils, even before they tasted the water. Our thirst, however, forced us often to sip a little of it just as it was; for when it was made into coffee or tea, it was still more intolerable. To make search about elsewhere at this time of night when it was dark, was not only impracticable but dangerous, on account of the lions. At break of day we discovered some traces which led us to the fountain-head of this land-spring, which had been closed up by the trampling of the buffalos feet; we, made haste therefore, to dig it open again, when we discovered some more tolerable water to quench our thirst, which was actually unbearable. We made frequent use of sugar-candy as a tolerably good palliative for

for our thirst, during our travels in this hot and scorching climate; but this did not relieve us for any long time together. At 9 o'clock in the evening the thermometer stood at 64, and the next day, being the 4th, at break of a day, a good deal of dew having fallen, I found it had fallen 10 degrees.

We now prosecuted our journey, following the lower road by *Van Staades-rivier*, which at that time was brackish and rather deep. For want of proper precaution in our Hottentots, our oxen turned back before they got half way across the river, and at the same time were thrown into confusion and disorder; so that it was difficult to save both them and the waggon from sinking. When we reached the other side, and were baiting our cattle, eighteen *Gonaquas*-Hottentots, paid us a visit from a *craal* which was in the neighbourhood.

This nation was composed of about two hundred people, who were all graziers, and at that time lived there in two separate villages. They are certainly a mixture of Hottentots and Caffres, as their language had an affinity with that of both these nations; but in their utterance, which was like that of human beings, in the natural blackness of their complexions, in the great strength and robustness of their limbs, and lastly in the height of their stature, they had a greater resemblance to the Caffres, several of whom were likewise at that time among them. The cloaks of the *Gonaquas* are also made of dressed cow-hides, like those of the caffres. These cloaks are very pliant; a quality which is owing partly to their being rubbed a good deal, which I myself saw performed with stones on the inside of them; and partly by the great quantity of grease, which, being mixed up with bucku powder, is rubbed into them. Both sexes are adorned with brass rings, on which they set a great value, and wear them on their arms and legs, as well as brass plates of different sizes and figures, which they fasten in their ears and hair.

As to beads, which, to speak of in a general way, they call *sintela*, the small red ones are much more coveted than the rest; these are called *lenkitenka*, (See the specimen of the Caffre's language, which I have annexed at the end of this journal.) The genuine Caffres had,

in this respect, precisely the same taste; but many of them had got ivory rings, of the thickness and breadth of about half an inch, and of such a size as to be strung upon the arms above the elbows. These, however, are only worn by the men; on which account a Caffre, who had sold me his bracelets, seemed extremely uneasy, saying, that he was now naked about his arms like a woman. Both the Caffres and Gonaquas are not only very importunate beggars, but likewise exceedingly unreasonable in their dealings, as after they are paid for their wares, they are very ready to ask for a handsome present into the bargain.

Both the Gonaquas and Caffres differ from other Hottentots in one particular, this is their being circumcised. This operation is performed on youths of different ages, as they are accustomed to wait till they can perform it on severals at one time.

The Gonaquas women use almost the same kind of apron or veil with the Hottentot females. The men are much more naked and less covered about this part than the males among the Hottentots, inasmuch as they cover with a little cap or case, made of the skin of an animal, the extremities only of what modesty should teach them entirely to conceal. This socket, which resembles the extremity of the thumb of a glove, is sometimes fastened with a small thong, or the sinew of an animal, to some strings of beads or leathern belts, which they wear as an ornament around their waists. Some individuals are to be seen with lions or buffalos tails hanging on these same belts, as trophies of their courage in having killed these beasts.

On account of the nakedness of these people, which I have just been describing, it may be thought that they have as little modesty as covering: but the truth is, that very few of them could be induced even by presents, to take off their little cases, as I wished to be perfectly satisfied that they were circumcised. Indeed, I have been informed by a farmer, that in Caffreland one frequently sees even grown up girls without any covering whatsoever; and that in particular dances, it constitutes part of the solemnity for the youths of both sexes to make such oblations to love in the presence of every one, as by the laws

laws of decency and of polished nations, are always consummated in private, and considered as sacred to the married state alone.

The Caffres seemed to me to resemble very much in appearance the *Mosambique* slaves, whom I had seen at the Cape; and, perhaps, these nations border upon each other; and consequently the former is probably descended from the latter, or the latter from the former.

The Gonaquas Hottentots, who at this time paid their respects to me, came chiefly with an intent to beg tobacco. All of them were armed with one or two of the javelins, which they call *bassagais*, (vide Plate II. Vol. I. Fig. 1, 2.) as well as with short sticks, to which they gave the name of *kirris*. I saw a lad very nearly hit a sparrow-hawk in its flight with one of these. But they took so bad an aim, when they threw their javelins, that, though they made many trials, they could not hit a handkerchief which I had set up at the distance of twenty paces, between two sticks, by way of mark for them, and at the same time as a prize for him that should hit it. This want of dexterity, certainly proceeded from their having neglected to practise, as they lived too distant from the Boshiesmen Hottentots, and Caffres, and too nigh the Christians, either to be able to exercise any hostilities against the former, or to dare to do it against the latter. In the meantime they were very busy in examining each others javelins narrowly, and in feeling for their proper balance. They threw them, however, with much force; and, as I have been informed by several people, are able to pierce a man or a gazel through the body at twenty paces distant. I then shot at a sheet of paper with a fowling-piece, and as they seemed to be very much amazed at the holes that were made, and at the same time to be very desirous of keeping the paper, I gave it to them, but soon after they offered to give it me again for a morsel of tobacco.

Moreover the *Gonaquas* Hottentots were graziers, and in some sort tillers of the ground, as the Caffre nation is also said to be. The kind of corn which they sow, is the *bolcus sorgum*, which is likewise used in the south of Europe, and known to yield abundantly. The colonists call it *Caffre-corn*. The stalks shoot up to a man's height,
and

A VOYAGE TO THE

and as thick as a rush. They terminate in a panicle or branchy ear, eighteen inches long, with seeds of about the same size as those of rice; two or three of these ears commonly yield three fourths of a pint of corn. The time of sowing this seed, is said to be in August or September. But in the beginning of November, while I yet remained in *Sisfikamma*, I saw it already fit for cutting, at a farmer's who set little store by it, giving it to his cattle only. The *Caffres* use to bruise this corn between stones, and make it into loaves, which they bake under the embers.

However, they mostly use to ferment with a certain root and water, till it produces a kind of inebriating liquor. They generally consume their whole stock, immediately in the autumn, which however, is not considerable. The *Caffre* Prince *PALOO*, whom the colonists called king *PWAKOON*, is said to have killed himself by drinking this liquor.

For many reasons we hastened our departure from hence. Our course was now to the north, over plain level fields, for the most part covered with a dry arid grass about two feet high. Our guide took us first to a well of lukewarm water, and afterwards at night to another pool of water, at the bottom of a river that was dried up. Both places were very acceptable to us as well as to our cattle, though the water was none of the best. We took up our night's lodging near this latter spot.

It was with difficulty, that we could collect wood enough round about the neighbouring parts to boil our tea-kettle; and after all, we ran a great risk of having an end put to our whole expedition by a fire. A *Hottentot*, in looking for something with a piece of lighted wood, happened to set the dry grass on fire, which spread in it almost as if it had been oakum; so that if we had not been very quick in stopping the progress of the flames, we should soon have seen the whole district in one continued flame, and our waggon would have been entirely demolished in the conflagration, and blown up into the air; for there was not only a good deal of coom about it, but it also contained many inflammable matters; such as the sail-cloth tilt, dried herbs and paper, a
cask

cask of spirits, and about twenty pounds weight of gunpowder. The wind blew hard from the south-west, the thermometer at eleven at night being at 66, and the next day about dawn at 64, when we saddled our horses and put our oxen to the waggon. At nine we got to little *Zwart-kops* river, and set off from thence about four in the afternoon, and arrived at great *Zwart-kops* river at six o'clock.

We had seen on the road large herds of the wild asses, called *quaggas*, and of *hart-beests*; as also, for the first time, six female buffalos, with two young ones. They came from the sea-side, from whence our guide supposed they had been forced to make their retreat thus at noon, either on account of the lions or of flies.

We had not yet been able to come within reach of any game, so that our salted wether had hitherto been our only resource. This, in its skin bag, had already acquired a pretty strong haut gout, in consequence of the warmth of the weather. Mr IMMELMAN, who was nice in his eating, and not used to salted meat, especially when it was any way tainted, had, from our first setting out, it being now the fifth day, suffered much from hunger. For our small stock of bread would not at this time afford us above two biscuits a man per day, each biscuit weighing about an ounce and a half.

At this *Zwart-kops* river, where we were now arrived, and intended to pass the night, we found two farmers had got in before us, who were come thither in order to get salt and hunt. Indeed, they had already shot several heads of game, which they had hung up in large slips and shreds on the bushes, waggons, and fences, in order to dry it in the sun, in the same manner as the Hottentots did the elephant's flesh near *Diep-rivier*, as I mentioned before, Vol. I. page 223. From this flesh there was diffused round about the spot not only a crude and rank smell, but also a putrid stench from such parts of it as had arrived at the state of putrefaction; and the farmers wives and children, together with the Hottentots who had come with them, as well with a view to assist them as for their own pleasure, were employed, some in feasting upon it, others in sleeping, and others again in scarifying away a great number of birds of prey, which hovered

ed round about them, and over their heads, in order to steal away the flesh. This horrid spectacle, of so many carnivorous human creatures, awakened in me a lively remembrance of the cannibals in *New-Zealand*, and had very nearly taken away our appetites for a meat supper, so that we resolved to bear with our hunger that night as well as we could: but at last comes our guide, very opportunely, with the shoulder of a *hart-beest*, which we instantly cut, and dressed in our pot with dreeping; a dish which was called by the Hottentots by the name of the instrument (*P'nora*, which means a knife,) with which it is cut in pieces. Our mouths watered at the sight of it, and we eat it with an excellent appetite, which was now no longer spoiled by any reflections similar to those I have just mentioned.

At break of day, on the 6th, my guide and I took a ride, in order to cut up the *hart-beest* he had killed, and loaded one horse with as much as he was able to carry, to be laid up in the waggon, by way of making provision for the journey.

A small herandrous plant, called the *tulbagia*, by LINNÆUS after M. TULBAG, governor at the Cape, grew here in great plenty; though I had never before seen more than a single specimen of it, and that was on the road to *Zwellendam*. Here I likewise saw, for the first time, a small kind of onion, with spiral leaves; caught an *amphisbana*; and drew up the description of a *cleome juncea*, which I have inserted in the *Acta Societ. Upsal.* Vol. III. page 192.

The farmers here, as well as some others, who were going to the Cape before me, were so obliging, as, at my request, to take with them the packet of herbs I had already collected; else, I should not have had room in my waggon for all my collection.

In this river the tide was very visible. The wind blew strong from south-south-west. At noon the thermometer was 71 in the shade, and in the evening, after the moon was up, at 64. On the 7th, at half past four in the morning, the thermometer was at 52.

We now proceeded on our journey, going northwards, and in our way, about a mile and a half from the river, we met with the principal *Zout-pan*, or Salt-pan. By
this

this name those places are distinguished, where there is a quantity of culmiary salt produced.

This salt-pan was an extensive plain, covered over with a level and continued crust of salt, upon which there stood a little water in several places; so that there could not be a more natural resemblance of a frozen lake than this. By contrasting this with the warmth of the weather and surrounding trees and flowers, would certainly at first sight have struck me with the greatest astonishment, had I not previously been informed of the real cause of the phenomenon. Towards the sides the crust of salt was thin; and just there one might perceive, that it was diffused over a loamy and clayey soil. But a little farther towards the middle, I found it was above two feet deep, without being able to discover the bottom of it, or any water underneath it. The colonists who worked here with poles, imagined that the crust of salt extended many fathoms below the surface.

This salt-pan was of an oblong shape, and about three miles in circumference. After there have been several warm days together, there is formed in different places on the crust, a hoar frost, as it were, which is the finest and strongest salt, and is with good reason supposed by the colonists to exceed that of Lunenburg. Indeed, the whole of it seems to be quite pure and fine: and it seems to me, and is allowed by others, to give a better taste to the butter and meat that is preserved in it, than any that comes from the other salt-pans to be met with in Africa; as *Saldanka-bay*, between *Zoet-melk* and *Gawrijs* rivers, and in a certain spot behind the *Sneeuw-bergs*, or snowy mountains.

My Hottentots were occupied in collecting a quantity of the finest salt, as much as I thought would be necessary for the purpose of salting our meat, and such skins of animals as I might wish to preserve. In the mean time, I myself made a rich capture of many reptiles and insects hitherto unknown; some of which were stuck fast and dried up in the crystals of salt, while others were dying, or had just expired, in consequence of the viscid saline matter with which they were in contact. Many insects were also drowned in the clear water or briny liquid, which, after it had rained, was collected in certain places.

places in the incrustation of salt. We were obliged to wade a good way into it; and although the salt dried and crystallized upon our feet and legs, till at night we found water to wash it off with, yet no ill effects ensued from it: a circumstance which I thought proper to mention, for the encouragement of such as may hereafter collect insects in this or other places of the same nature.

The *cimex paradoxus*, that singular insect, which I have described and given a drawing of in the Swedish Transactions, (Vol. XXXVIII. p. 235,) * I discovered at this place, as at noon-tide I sought for shelter among the branches of a shrub from the intolerable heat of the sun. Though the air was now extremely still and calm, so as scarcely to have shaken an aspen leaf, yet I thought I saw a little withered, pale, crumpled leaf, eaten as it were by caterpillars, fluttering from the tree. This appeared to me so very uncommon, that I thought it worth my while suddenly to quit my verdant bower in order to contemplate it; and I could scarcely believe my eyes, when I saw a live insect, resembling, in shape and colour, the fragment of a withered leaf, with the edges turned up and eaten away, as it were, by caterpillars, and at the same time all over beset with prickles. Nature, by this peculiar form, has certainly extremely well defended and concealed, as it were in a mask, this insect from birds and its other diminutive foes; probably with a view to its preservation, and to employ it for some important office in the system of her œconomy; a system with which we are too little acquainted, in general too little investigated, and, in every part of it, can never sufficiently admire with that respect and adoration which we owe to the great Author of nature and Ruler of the universe.

At night we came to *Kuga*, a little river, the water of which was brackish; but some good and fresh water was found in a well hard by it. Here also we had a hasty glimpse of two hares which appeared to resemble the ordinary hares.

My companion, who was, as I have before mentioned, subject to a spitting of blood, happened here to have a serious attack of this complaint; a complaint to which the animal diet he had been accustomed to during the whole

* See likewise Plate VII. of this Volume.

whole journey, together with the fatigue he had undergone, and the scorching heat of the sun, could not but have disposed him. Bleeding, together with a little saltpetre and the water from this spring, were the only means, (and those not ill adapted to the purpose,) which we fortunately had at hand for his recovery in this desert place. Upon the whole, I took as much care of him as I possibly could on an open plain, with no other canopy than the sky. The fineness of the weather, together with the coolness of the night, and above all his utter aversion to all sickness, circumstanced as we were, I believe contributed not a little towards his speedy recovery. The next morning, however, when, in order to make a trial of his strength, he walked a few hundred paces from our baiting-place, his life was in still greater and more imminent danger. This was from a herd of young cattle, which, by way of experiment, had been left in this place, under the care of the slave, and being at that time unaccustomed to the sight of any human creature besides, had like to have gored him to death. These fierce animals then, making a half circle round Mr IMMELMAN, advanced continually nearer and nearer to him, so that he was forced to retire backwards. It is an old saying, "that a curst cow has short horns;" and we found it in a manner verified on this occasion, for a heifer without horns was the forwardest and most vicious of them all. I therefore hastened thither with my loaded piece with an intention of discharging it among them, and at the same time, repeating the firing as often as I was able, to cover our retreat. In the mean time, however, it came into my mind first to try a milder method, which I had heard of, when in Europe, as a certain defence against the attacks of wild and vicious bulls; and which, in short, was no other than to hold your hat before your face, and on a sudden uncover it at intervals, at the same time, with a quick pace, advancing upon them, and standing still alternately. With this method we so far succeeded, that the heifer without horns, as well as the rest of the herd, was very much scared. Just after this, one of my Hottentots was attacked by the same herd, but escaped them by the lightness of his heels. After-

wards, on our returning this way home, we were informed, that the owner of the herd had been under the necessity of removing it from hence, as a lion had begun to infest these parts.

Two hartbeests came also early this morning, very near our waggon in order to survey us but, unluckily at that time we had no gun ready charged. At 12 o'clock I found the thermometer, when placed in the shade under our waggon, at 83.

We set off again in the afternoon, directing our course to the east, and came to a place on the lower part of *Zondags-rivier*, known by the name of *t' Nuka t' Kama*, which, I believe, signifies *grassy water*. We found here the recent traces of a lion, and took proper precautions against it, in case we should go down to the river. In the evening we likewise thought we saw in the thickets an elephant at a considerable distance from us. These animals are said to assemble in great numbers in the thorny thickets, made by the *guaijacum afrum* and the *mimosa nilotica*, which afford them a good asylum.

We began now to find the Guinea hen (*numida meleagris*) in these parts. They kept together in flocks, and of course were very shy and cautious. I observed they flew low and straight forwards, like our partridges. They seemed to seek the greatest part of their food on the ground, but at night they perched together up in the trees; so that at one time I killed six of them at a shot, and wounded several more, which, however, escaped in the dark. Their flesh was dry, and much inferior to that of the common hen.

Of *Sunday-rivier*, which at this part made a great many windings, the banks opposite to us were very high and steep, and indeed quite perpendicular; consisting, to all appearance, merely of the same dry and clayey materials as the surface of the earth exhibited on our side. In the upper part, the bank seemed to be quite level and plain; but it is difficult to conjecture, whence this dissimilarity in the banks of the river should arise, unless one of them had been thrown up by an earthquake; or that the river by degrees had made its way to the side of some flat hill level at top, and undermined it, till the part
that

that hung over fell down, when it would necessarily be quite level and perpendicular; as, in fact, it at present is. We had rain at night, with a south-west wind.

At five o'clock in the morning, on the 9th, when we departed from hence, the thermometer was at 62; and at half after three in the afternoon we arrived at *Zondags-rivier's-drift*. We had, however, gone out of our road on purpose to chase two buffalos, one of which made its escape though wounded, and the other leaped into a close thicket, where it neither was adviseable, nor indeed possible to follow it. In the mean time to my great surprise, we could see from the top of the bushes the animal piercing through the thickest of the wood with the greatest ease, just as if he was merely running through a rye-field. We saw also a *Koedoe* (the antelope *Strepsiceros* of PALLAS.)

Soon after our arrival at this part of *Sunday-rivier*, we were waited upon by three old Hottentots, who appeared as if they came to pry into the business in those parts. They were, properly speaking, of the race of *Bosbies-men*, though of the more polished sort, who, even in their own language, distinguished themselves by the name of *good Bosbies-men*; probably from the circumstance of their grazing a few cattle, and not living by rapine like others of their countrymen. My guide explained their business to me, which was to beg tobacco, and to complain of their distressed situation; the farmers having been with them, and having carried off all their young people, so that they were now left alone in their old age to look after themselves and their cattle. I ordered my interpreter to tell them in reply, that we, as they might very easily perceive, were no farmers, and still less kidnappers.

I must here inform the reader, that many of the ignorant Hottentots and Indians not having been able to form any idea of the Dutch East-India Company and the board of direction, the Dutch from the very beginning in India, politically gave out the company for one individual powerful prince, by the christian name of *Jan* or *John*. This also gained them more respect, than if they had actually been able to make the Indians comprehend, that they were really governed by a company of

merchants. For this reason I desired my interpreter to say farther, that we were the children of *Jan Company*, who had sent us out to view this country, and collect plants for medical purposes. I likewise bid him let them understand, that we had a great quantity of powder and ball, together with five stand of fire-arms, as they themselves saw; that we intended to shoot a great deal of game, and it would be a great pity if they could not come along with us, and partake of the abundant spoil of flesh, which would otherwise be suffered to lie as food for the birds and beasts of prey.

This story, patched up in haste, with a mixture of truth and falshood, appeared to have made a deep impression on these Hottentots. It was, indeed, touching them in a tender part, to talk to them of so much meat, and to pity their emaciated state, without letting them observe, however, that it was more for my own advantage than theirs, that I was so desirous of their company. That same night then, there not only came to me three middle-aged men to offer their services, but I even saw the three old fellows above-mentioned, with great eagerness and diligence preparing their shoes, in order to be ready to follow us in our expedition the next morning.

Having given my guide to understand, how strange this conduct of the Hottentots appeared to me, when I compared it with the account they had given of themselves at first, at the same time that from this circumstance I was afraid they would prove false; besides, that I questioned whether we should be able to find food for so many as six of them, we being five in number ourselves, which in all made eleven persons; he replied, "Pshaw! this is always the Hottentots' custom to lye the first word they speak; and as for victuals, we shall get game enough to eat, I'll warrant you." The latter part of his reply gave me some satisfaction; for as to the Hottentots custom of lying at the first word, I was pretty even with them in that respect, with my pretended relationship to *Jan Company*.

In the morning of the 10th, we set out on our journey, being in all eleven persons. The six newly-arrived Hottentots did not understand a word of Dutch, for which cause we were obliged to make use of the three others as interpreters;

preters; though, in general, we made them understand us pretty well by signs, and some few Hottentot words we had learnt the meaning of, and could ourselves pronounce with the proper clack against the roof of the mouth. Still, however, Mr IMMELMAN and I could not be otherwise than anxious about the procuring of food for such a number of people, when, in case of a scarcity, we expected to hear them grumbling against their *Moses and Aaron*, who had inveigled them into the desert; for the buffalo which we had chased the day before got away from us, though the bushes in more than one place were stained with his blood. Upon this, however, we soon observed, that our volunteer corps, the six last Hottentots, made no difficulty of eating, without any preparation whatever, the ill-tasted beans of a wild shrub, (the *guaiacum afrum*.) I thought I could shew the Hottentots another substance also, which might serve to appease their hunger in case of necessity. This was the *gum arabic*, which they might gather in many spots thereabouts from the *mimosa nilotica*; but this was a species of food well known to them, and of which they had often made trial. When in want of other provisions, it is said the Boshies-men live upon this for many days together.

This day I saw, for the first time, a herd of *bosch-varkens*, or, as they are also called, *wilde-varkens*, (wood-swine, or wild-swine) in their wild uncultivated state; for I had hitherto only seen one of this species of animals in the menagerie at the Cape. It was confined there with a strong iron chain, as it was very wild and vicious. M. PALLAS, who in his *Spicil. Zool. Fasc. II. p. 11.* and *Miscel. Zool. p. 16.* has described this animal by the name of *aper Æthiopicus*, and has (in Tab. I. l. c.) given a drawing of it, farther informs us in his *Spicil. Zool. Fasc. XI. Additam. p. 84.* that one of them killed the keeper of the menagerie at Amsterdam. It may very easily be imagined that this creature is exceedingly dangerous, if one only takes notice of its large tusks, (vide Tab. V. l. c.) These are four in number. Two of them proceed from the upper jaw, and turn upwards like a horn, consisting, however of a fine ivory-like substance. In a head of this animal salted and dried, which I gave to the Royal Academy of Sciences in Sweden, the tusks

or horns stand nine inches out of the jaws, and measure full five inches in circumference at the base. The two other tusks, which come from the lower jaw, project but three inches from the mouth, being flat on the inside, and corresponding with another plain surface similar to it in the upper tusks. These the beasts make use of not so much for biting, as for goring and butting with. A little pig of this species, which I afterwards caught at *Visch-rivier*, and had it tied up, thinking to bring it along with me alive, had already got this trick, so that I was soon forced to let it be killed. It was terribly vicious, and quick in all his motions; and though at that time not absolutely dangerous, yet my Boshies-men were very much afraid of it. "We had rather, said they, attack a lion on the plain, than an African wild boar; for this, though much smaller, comes rushing on a man as swift as an arrow, and throwing him down snaps his legs in two, and at the same instant rips up his belly before he can get to strike it, and kill it with his javelin." The dwelling-place of this same species of wild boar, to which the avenues seemed to me to be very narrow, is under-ground. I have been told indeed, that the *bosch-varkens* go down into them backwards, and place themselves there in a row one behind the other; but this is not very likely, for probably these passages are widened lower down. However, this much is certain, that people seldom or never venture to attack them in their holes, as there is always danger from their rushing out upon them unawares.

The body of this animal is small in proportion to its head, a conformation which facilitates its burrowing and living under-ground. Neither would it be adviseable for a man on horseback to approach too near or to hunt this animal, as it will often turn round on a sudden, and striking off one of the horses legs, afterwards kill both him and his rider. This day I pursued several pigs with the old sows, with a view to shoot one of them, but in vain, however, the chase of them afforded me a singular pleasure. In fact, the heads of the old ones, which were before of a tolerable size, appeared to have suddenly grown still larger and more shapeless than they were before; which momentary and wonderful change surprised me

me so much the more, as riding hard over a country full of bushes and pits, I had hitherto been prevented from giving sufficient attention to the manner in which it was brought about. The whole of the mystery, however, consisted in this; each of the old ones, during its flight, took a pig in its mouth; a circumstance that also explained to me another subject of my surprize, which was, that all the pigs which I was just before chasing along with the old ones, suddenly disappeared. But in this action we find a kind of unanimity among the wood-swine, in which they resemble the tame species, and which they have in a greater degree than many other animals. it is also very astonishing, that the pigs should be carried about in this manner between such large tusks as those of their mothers, without being hurt, or crying out in the least. I saw the same thing done, however, on two other occasions, as I was chasing them. The cry of these young ones was like that of our common pigs, as I found in some we afterwards caught.

I have it from very good authority, that one JOSHUA DE BOER, a farmer in Camdebo, had succeeded in obtaining a brood of these wood-swine, which had been coupled with the ordinary sort; but as the person who told it me had not sufficiently informed himself concerning the circumstances, I could get no farther insight into the matter. This experiment having failed in Holland, as mentioned by M. PALLAS, is no reason why it should not succeed better in other places. I observed a peculiar circumstance on my return home through *Lange-kloof*, which was, that two tame pigs at a farmer's in that province, not only went down on their knees to graze, but even successively changed this posture to that of standing, with the greatest ease. This faculty the animal appears to have acquired in its subterraneous caverns, and it proceeds from the creature's neck being rather short to be conveniently lowered to the ground.

The African wood-swine are also distinguished from every other species of swine, by four peculiar caruncles or excrescences. Two of these are broad and flat, being about two inches over both in length and breadth, and are placed at the distance of a hand's breadth just before and underneath the eyes. The other two are spherical,

an inch high, and are situated on the nose at three inches distance, in a straight line from behind the jaws. The tail is flattened at the tip; and this appendage they never fail, either old or young, to hold quite erect in the air during the whole time that they are pursued. With regard to the taste of it, I found the flesh very much resemble that of the common pig; but never observed the animals themselves to be of that dark hue ascribed to them by M. PALLAS, and which M. VOSMAER has given them in the coloured figures he has published; those that I saw being only of a bright yellow-colour, like the most part of our domestic swine. Nor did I hear any body in the colony call them *baartloopers*, as M. VOSMAER pretends they are termed: though, on the contrary, I have often heard the Hottentots call them *kannaba*, and have also been informed by them, that these creatures are fond of wallowing in the mire, and are wont to grub after the root of a shrub of the *mesembryanthemum* genus, which they call *da-t'kai*.

We came to the upper part of *t'Kurenai*, or Little Sunday-river at night. We fixed our resting-place at the distance of a few gun-shots from a clan of *bastards*, or *Hottentot-Caffres*, who are the offspring of the mixture of both these nations. They chiefly spoke the Caffre language, but had neither the large lips, robust, and easy form, nor the black complexion of the *Caffres*. To me they seemed not so swarthy as my own Hottentots, and I imagine, that they originate only from a set of people, who having acquired some cattle by servitude among the *Caffres*, had formed themselves into this society. The iris of their eyes was of a very dark brown hue, and almost, if not altogether as dark as the pupil. They had a great number of cattle, and appeared to live very happily in their way. As soon as ever they had brought their cattle from pasture they milked them; an occupation they intermixed with singing and dancing.

We seldom see such happiness and contentment as appears to be indicated by this festive custom, in a handful of people wholly uncivilized, and subsisting in their original savage state, in the midst of a perfect desert. Mr IMMELMAN accompanied me, in order to view with his own eyes the real archetype of that state of pastoral felicity.

city, which the poets are continually occupied in painting and describing. We introduced ourselves here also as being the children of the company, and were received by them with a friendly simplicity and homely freedom, which, however, by no means lessened them in our esteem as men. They presented us with milk, and danced at our desire; at the same time giving us to understand, that our character, as being a singular people with plaited hair, and at the same time simplers and viper-catchers, had reached them long before we arrived.

We were witnesses of their country-dances, in which there was very little either of agility or art. While their feet were employed in a kind of stamping and moderately slow movement, each of them at intervals made several small gentle motions with a little stick, which they held in their hands. The simplicity which prevailed in their dances was equally observable in their singing, the following being all the words used to the tune of one of their country-dances, which I took down in writing, at the time, *Maijema, Maijema, bub, bub, bub*. The former part of this was chaunted repeatedly *piano* by an elderly matron, who was answered by the young men and maids in the latter words, sung *staccato* by way of chorus. It must be owned, that this concert was not well calculated to please a nice ear; however, it inspired a certain degree of joy and cheerfulness, and was by no means disagreeable.

They had another kind of dance, which consisted in taking each other by the hand, and dancing gently in a circle round about one or more persons, who were placed in the middle of the ring, and whose movements were brisker and quicker; yet we could not keep from laughing, though at the same time we were not a little hurt, to see the poor infants pop their heads alternately in and out of the bags hanging at the backs of their mothers, who were also dancing: so that we had good reason to fear that they would break their necks. But what appeared still more ridiculous was, that these little Hot-tentots were far from shewing any dislike to this treatment: but, on the contrary, were so delighted with it, that they sufficiently shewed their displeasure by crying, when their mothers, who were soon tired with carrying them

them on their backs, wanted to set them down, or retire from the dance.

Besides the pleasures which these daily dances may be supposed to afford them, they have at their greater festivals the more delightful enjoyment of voluptuous love, which, at those times, the youth of both sexes, by their laws, have full opportunity given them to pursue. For it is said, that the unmarried part of the company, in the very middle of the dance, withdraw to a private place in couples successively and at different intervals, without giving the least subject of offence and scandal, and without having any occasion to blush when they return again to the company. I have intentionally said only, that *opportunity is given them* for this purpose; as I could not learn, whether their laws, together with the opportunity, allowed the action itself, which, as I have mentioned above, the Caffres permit themselves to transact in the presence of the whole company that is dancing.

This remissness of their laws, however, in allowing them opportunities of this kind, appears to be in direct opposition to the rigorous strictness of these same laws in the following particular. Any young woman whatsoever, who, after such dance, shall prove pregnant, shall be put to death, together with her paramour; unless, which indeed for the most part is the case, the oldest people in the clan mitigate the punishment, by commuting it into a perpetual union; ordering them besides, to forfeit an ox or a cow to feast the whole community with, by way of atonement for their crime. In this latter article of the mitigation of the decree, it is easy to perceive the selfish motives of the society; but it is, perhaps, more difficult from this strange edict itself, to trace out the intention of the primitive institutor of it. Besides, who could have supposed, that among these artless herdsmen another custom should prevail, which should sacrifice the virtue and innocence of the fair sex to the interested views of a parent or guardian? A Hottentot, who at that time dwelt in those parts, assured me, that upon any Hottentot's paying a stipulated price to a girl's relations, she was obliged to sleep with him; but that the law neither ordained, nor had there been any instance known, that a young girl should be given

up into the arms of a Christian, or any white man, upon any consideration whatever. The Hottentot likewise said, that for his own part, he had not entered into any union here of that sort, as for two, or at most perhaps three nights enjoyment, it would have cost him the value of a cow; a price, he said, which would have caused him severely reflect his bargain.

This Hottentot, who informed me of the circumstances I have now just been mentioning, and gave me at the same time many other curious anecdotes and relations, I had the greater cause to believe, as he had the appearance of being a sober sensible man, and indeed was known as such by my guide. He had been educated in a village near the Christians, in whose service he had always been; and at this time, with the assistance of the bastard or Caffre Hottentots belonging to this craal, he had caught, and now had in his custody, three old Boshies-women with their children, with a design to carry them home with him to his master for slaves. His master had given him a gun, but he was at that time quite run out of powder, consequently he was reduced to his shifts for food, both for himself and his slaves. I therefore supplied him with some powder, as I considered, that, so far from having the effect to rivet the chains of these wretched people, it would rather tend to make them sit lighter. He likewise informed me, that his female captives had threatened to bewitch him; but that he had no confidence in witchcraft, and equally despised both their threatenings and their savage manners.

A bastard Hottentot, who had gone along with him in this expedition, had been wounded in the shoulder with a poisoned arrow. The poison had been extracted from the wound immediately. The tumour had not indeed a bad appearance; yet the wounded man was far from well, and was himself dubious whether he should recover or not. Nothing was laid upon it but the bruised leaves of the *Hottentot fig-tree*.

They keep their milk in leathern sacks, which I have described above, never eating it till it is curdled; but the vessels into which they milked it were baskets of a peculiar kind, composed of roots plaited together so curiously.

ly, and in so close a manner, that they would not only contain milk but even water. These vessels would be as neat as they are light, if the Hottentots did not constantly neglect to wash them. Indeed, most of these baskets had assumed such an appearance from the milk being encrusted upon them, as at first led us to imagine that they were besmeared with cow-dung, in order to make them hold the liquor the better. But I have since tried baskets, that were quite new and clean, particularly one that I had brought home with me, and found, that, without any kind of daubing, they were not leaky in the least degree. These milk-pails, or baskets, are mostly of the shape of that delineated in Plate I. Vol. I. fig. 1. containing from a pint and a half to four gallons; and besides the advantage of being very light, they have likewise that of their rims being sufficiently pliable.

None of the cows of the African breed, whether they belong to the colonists or Hottentots, will permit themselves to be milked, till their hind legs are tied together first; as otherwise they never fail either to kick the persons who milk them, or else to get away from them. The interpreter, I have just mentioned, desired me, therefore, to observe here, as a very uncommon circumstance, that several of the cows belonging to these bastard Caffres, suffered themselves to be milked without being tied up. I likewise observed, that the cows here, whether tied up or loose, were, in general, too shy and wild to suffer themselves to be milked, except they had their calves with them, and had sucked them a little previously. Here the herdsmen themselves were also anxious that I should take notice, as a matter of curiosity, of the manner in which a cow, who had brought forth a dead calf, was at length induced to be milked. The scheme employed for this purpose, consisted in allowing her always to put her nose to the skin of her dead calf immediately before she was milked.

Circumcision is in use among these Hottentots as well as the *Gonaquas* and *Caffres*, and is performed upon youths at that period of life, when, to use their own expression, they are become half-men. Yet they commonly endeavour to adapt the time so, as to have an opportunity

for the first time, the tails of the jackall, or African fox, used as a preservative against the heat of the weather; inasmuch as the Hottentots wiped off the sweat from their faces with them, for this purpose carrying them about with them fastened on short sticks. Having now sufficiently examined into the manners of these people, we set out on our journey; and, as in the mean while our guide had given us the slip, and shot an old, lean, and lousy buffalo, we made an excursion to the place where it lay, and loaded our waggon with the best part of the meat, leaving the remainder to the bastard Hottentots, the birds of prey, and the hyenas. The lice which we found upon this buffalo, were of a new species; (See the description, together with a drawing of them, in *Mem. sur les Insectes*, Tom. VII.)

We afterwards drove higher up, along *Kurenoi-rivier*, and found the water there almost motionless and brackish. We gave orders to cut off the tops and grass of the reeds growing in this little stream, for the purpose of foddering our horses at night. During the night, the wolves which had probably got scent of the meat in our waggon, made us to understand by their howlings, that they were at no great distance from us.

C H A P. XI.

Journey from Little Sundays-river to Bosbies-mans-river.

OUR guide on the 12th of December led us first to the east and then to the south-east, over a champaign country, that we might bait and water our cattle at noon. This we did at a land-spring, which had been very much trampled under foot by the buffalos, and which had no drain or outlet. But at the distance of an hour's ride from this place, we found better water, and resolved to lodge the following night not far from the spot, in order to be ready in the morning to look out after the buffalos; as it is particularly in places just

like these, that they come out into the meadows to graze; but, on the contrary, in the day-time, on account of the heat, they generally choose to remain in the woods.

It had not been two hours dark, before we heard the roaring of lions, which sometimes appeared to be pretty near us. This was the first time that I had ever heard this sort of music, and, as there were a good many performers, it might properly be called a concerto of lions. They continued roaring the whole night, whence my guide concluded, that they had assembled on the plains in order to copulate, and carry on their amours, by fighting and attacking each other as cats do.

To give as just a description of the roaring of the lion as I can, I must inform the reader, that it consisted in a hoarse inarticulate sound, which seemed at the same time to have a hollowness in it, something like that proceeding from a speaking trumpet. The sound is somewhat between that of a German or Italian U and O, being drawn out to a great length, and seeming as if it proceeded from under the earth; though, in fact, after listening with the utmost attention, I could not hear precisely from what quarter it proceeded. The sound of the lion's voice has not the least resemblance to thunder, as M. DE BUFFON, Tom. IX. p. 22, from the voyage of BOULLAYE LE GOUZ, affirms it does. The truth is, it seemed to me to be neither particularly piercing nor tremendous: yet from its slow prolonged note, joined with nocturnal darkness, and the terrible idea a person is ready to form of this animal, it has made me shudder, even in such places, as I had an opportunity of hearing it in with more satisfaction, and without having the least reason to be afraid. We could plainly discover by our animals, when the lions, whether they roared or not, were observing us at a small distance. For in that case the hounds did not venture to bark, but kept quite close to the Hottentots; and our oxen and horses sighed deeply, frequently hanging back, and pulling slowly with all their might at the strong straps with which they were tied up to the waggon. They also laid themselves down upon the ground and stood up alternately, as if they did not know what to do with themselves; and, indeed, I might justly say, just as if they were in the agonies of death.

death. In the mean while, my Hottentots made the necessary preparations, and laid each of them their javelins by their sides. We likewise loaded all our five guns, three of which we distributed among those of our Hottentots who could speak Dutch.

Fires and fire-brands are universally considered, and, indeed, were said by my Hottentots to be, a great preservative and defence against lions and other wild beasts; yet they themselves could mention instances, in which the lion had leaped forward to the fire, and carried off some one of them, who had been sitting round and warming themselves. The animal too has sometimes carried its prey to so short a distance, that the poor wretch's companions have plainly overheard it champing and chewing his flesh. The Hottentots desired us who were placed in the waggon, not to be in too great a hurry to fire if a lion should take a leap among them, lest that in the dark we might at the same time hurt some of them. They had so planned matters that some of them should rather attempt to pierce him through with their hassagais or spears, while at the same instant the rest should attempt to cling about his legs.

They considered it as a certain fact, and I have since heard the same thing alledged by others, that a lion does not immediately kill the person he has got under him, unless he is led to do so by the resistance he meets with. At length, however, the royal tyrant, as they tell us, gives the victim the *coup de grace* on his breast with a hideous roar. On this occasion I must do my Hottentots the justice to say, that they did not betray the smallest degree of fear; though at the same time they considered the old and commonly-recieved notion to be certainly a fact, that both lions and tigers would attack a slave or a Hottentot, before they will a colonist or a white man. Mr IMMELMAN and I had consequently no such great reason to be in fear for our own persons, unless more than one lion should come to attack us, or that we should discharge our guns too rashly and miss him; for in such a case, the lion always rushes on the marksman. Viewing the matter, however, in a different light, we who lay in the waggon and at a distance from the fire, were most likely to receive a visit from the lions; or at least to see

our horses and oxen, which were tied up to the waggon, seized by them. Otherwise, because of the singularity of the spectacle, I should have been pleased to have seen an attack of this kind, did it cost me no more than a couple of my oxen. In such a case, indeed, my horses would probably have first fallen a prey to this rapacious animal, as it is commonly imagined, that the lion prefers them.

Among our oxen there was one which at this time, as well as since upon other similar occasions, seemed to be extremely disquieted and restless. It had also a singular and surprising custom of making an inward noise, which cannot be described; and this was the case likewise with the stallion, in his way. This, indeed, was sufficient to cause us keep ourselves in readiness, though it happened not to be absolutely necessary: however, we quickly got in the use of it, and several times laid ourselves down to sleep, devoid of care, leaving our beasts to sigh on unregarded. It is in fact, a wonderful circumstance, that the brute creation should have been taught solely by nature to be in dread of the lion; for our horses and oxen were all originally from places, where I am positive they could have no knowledge of this dreadful adversary of their's: so that in this we must admire the kindness of Providence, which, while it has sent such a tyrant as the lion amongst the animal creation, has likewise taught them to discern and distinguish it even at a distance with horror and trembling.

One would imagine that the roaring of the lion would be useful to the other animals, and serve as a warning to them to betake themselves to flight; but as when he roars, according to universal report, he puts his mouth to the ground, so that the sound is equally diffused all over the place, and thus as we have already said, rendering it impossible to hear from what quarter it comes, the animals are affrighted and scared to such a degree, as to fly about backwards and forwards in the dark to every side; in consequence of which, some of them may easily happen to run on to the very spot from whence the terrifying sound actually proceeds, and which they were most anxious to avoid.

A writer, in other respects deserving attention, who styles himself *Officier du Roi*, asserts, in his *Voyage à l'Isle de France*, &c. p. 63, that there are found in Africa whole armies of lions; a fact, of which, he says, he was informed, by three persons of consequence in the government, whose names he mentions.

This author, together with his informers, and those, if such there be, who have given him any credit, may be easily made to conceive the evident absurdity of the idea by this single consideration, that to support armies of lions, it would require a greater number of quadrupeds and game, as they call it, than is to be found not only in Africa, but in all the world besides. In order to establish this assertion, we may appeal to an arch observation made by the Indians, and reported by LAFITAU. "It is a very fortunate circumstance for mankind, said they, that the Portuguese are as few in number as they are cruel in their dispositions; just as it is with the tigers and lions with respect to the rest of the animal creation, or otherwise there would soon be an end of us men."

With respect to the testimonies of the persons of consequence appealed to here, I must beg leave to notice, that we may at any time, without the least hesitation, call in question any position which militates against common sense. Besides, in the East-Indies, knowledge and the semblance of truth are not always absolutely inseparable from authority. I have myself heard a person belonging to the council at the Cape, relate to strangers the most ridiculous absurdities concerning the country in which he lived. Stories of this kind often have their origin from the farmers and yeomen, who come from a great distance, and who often find it their interest to amuse their rulers with pleasing tales; which, the more wonderful they are, with the greater eagerness they are swallowed. Another source of these false reports is in the depraved disposition of mankind, who are very ready to impose as much as they can on the credulity of the weak and simple. Again, allowing it to be true, that the Romans introduced into their public spectacles a great number of lions, which, indeed, they might easily collect, from the extensive tracts of country which they possessed in Africa and Asia, yet it never can be agreeable
either

either to truth or probability, that armies of lions should be found in these parts of the globe: and it is in these quarters only that they exist, according to the exceeding probable position of M. DE BUFFON. So that when the Abbe DE MANET, a later writer, in his description of the northern part of Africa, affirms, that the same kind of lion is also found in America, we may very safely consider this merely as a hasty assertion, which is neither warranted by the authority of others nor by his own experience: indeed, this author's testimony is much more to be depended upon when he informs us, that the "Negroes in the northern parts of Africa, are used to catch lions in pits, but do not dare to eat any of the flesh, for fear lest the lions should take vengeance on them." However, in this particular, I have not found the Hottentots or inhabitants of the southern parts of Africa equally superstitious, as they informed me, that they eat the flesh of lions, and considered it as both good and wholesome. They also told me, that the lions as well as hyænas, had formerly been much bolder than they are at present, as they used to seize them at night, and carry them off from their cottages: at the same time they assured me, that a lion having once tasted human flesh would never after, if he could help it, prey upon any other. They added, that for the same reason they were forced to fix benches up in trees to sleep on; so that they could not so readily be caught unawares by the lions, and might more easily defend themselves when they were attacked by them.

So that, indeed, they were forced to acknowledge, that with the assistance of the Christians and their fire-arms, they are at present much less exposed to the ravages of this fierce animal; while, on the other hand, I was obliged to agree with them, that the colonists themselves were a much greater scourge to them than all the savage creatures of their country put together; as the Hottentot nations, since the arrival of the colonists in this part of the world, have found themselves reduced to a much narrower space in their possessions, and their numbers very much diminished.

In these times, at least, the lion does not willingly attack any animal openly, unless incensed, or extremely hungry;

in

in which latter case it is said he fears no danger, and is repelled by no resistance. The method in which the lion seizes his prey, is almost always to spring or throw himself on it, with one great leap from the place of his concealment; yet, if he happens to miss his leap, he will not, as the Hottentots unanimously assured me, follow his prey any farther; but, as if he were ashamed, turning round towards the place where he lay in ambush, slowly, and step by step, as it were, measures the exact length between the two points, in order to discover how much too short of, or beyond the mark he had taken his leap. One of these animals, notwithstanding, was once known to pursue an elk-antelope with the greatest eagerness and ardour, without any one being able to see the end of the chase. It is remarkable, that the foxes in Europe, according to M. COLLON's *Hist. Nouv. de l'Univers*, Tom. IV. p. 20. when they have leaped short of their mark, and their prey has escaped from them, measure the length of their leap, in the same manner as the lion is said to do.

It is particularly near rivers and springs, that the lion finds it answers his purpose best to lie in ambush. Any animal whatever that is obliged to go thither in order to quench its thirst, is in danger, *tanquam canis ad Nilum*, of falling a victim to the irresistible power of this blood-thirsty tyrant.

It would appear, that in case gazels, and other such animals had scent of the lion when he was near them, as strong as it seemed to be in my horses and oxen, they might easily escape the danger. I do not know how the fact really stands; but it is possible that the lion, like the sportsmen of this country, may know so well how to chuse a place for its concealment, that the wind may drive its effluvia away from the side whence it might be perceived by its prey.

Following the example of other travellers in such tracts of this part of Africa as are infested by lions, we never neglected the precaution to make loud cracks with our large ox-whip, whenever we were about to pass a river. These cracks of a whip, which, indeed, make a louder noise, and a greater vibration in the air than the discharge of a pistol, nay, are heard at a much greater distance

tance than the report of a gun, is considered as a very efficacious method of scaring away the wild beasts. These large whips appear, therefore, to have contributed a good deal to the greater degree of dread which the lions have of mankind, since the arrival of the colonists.

The lion's plan of seizing his prey, as before described, is not, however, probably, so general as to be without exception. Soon after my arrival at the Cape, I heard of a married woman, who, in some part of the *Carrow* country, was killed by a lion at her own door, which likewise devoured her hand; others, indeed, thought she came by her death in a different manner. Several farmers related to me the following singular trick of a lion in *Camdebo*.

"A few years since a farmer mounted on horseback, with a led horse in hand, met with a lion, which had laid itself down in the public road where the farmer was to pass. Thus circumstanced, he thought it most prudent to turn back, but found the lion had taken a circuit, and laid itself in his way again; he was therefore forced to turn back again, and so alternately backwards and forwards. Whether the lion was scared away by several more travellers coming up or not, I cannot say that I remember: for I find, that I have neglected to make a minute of the story, probably, because I did not think my authority sufficiently to be depended upon. The following occurrence, however, I think I may mention, as being tolerably well authenticated, and serving to shew both the cowardice and insidious disposition of the lion.

"An elderly Hottentot in the service of a Christian, near the upper part of *Sunday-rivier* on the *Camdebo* side, observed a lion following him at a great distance for two hours together. He thence naturally concluded, that the lion only waited the approach of darkness, in order to make him his prey; and in the mean time, expected nothing else than to serve for this fierce animal's supper, as he had no other weapon of defence than a staff, and knew that he could not reach home before it was dark. But as he was well acquainted with the nature of the lion, and the manner of its seizing upon its prey, and at the same time had leisure at intervals to ponder on the ways and means in which it was most probable that his
existence

existence would be put an end to, he at length bethought himself of a method of saving his life, for which, indeed, he had to thank his meditations upon death, and the small skill he had in Zoology, (or, to speak plainly, his ignorance of the nature of animals.) For this end, in place of making the best of his way home, he looked out for a *klipkrans*, (so a rocky place level and plain at top, is commonly called in this country, and having a perpendicular precipice on the one side of it,) and sitting himself down on the edge of one of these precipices, he found, to his great satisfaction, that the lion also made a halt, and kept the same distance as before. So soon as it grew dark, the Hottentot sliding a little forwards, let himself down below the upper edge of the precipice upon a projecting part or cleft of the rock, where he could barely keep himself from falling. But in order to deceive the lion still more, he set his hat and cloak on the stick, making with it at the same time a gentle motion just over his head, and a little way from the edge of the mountain. This crafty expedient had the desired effect. He did not remain long in that situation, before the lion came creeping softly towards him like a cat, and mistaking the skin-cloak for the Hottentot himself, took his leap with such exactness and precision, as to fall headlong down the precipice, directly close to the snare which had been erected for him; when the Hottentot is said, in his great joy, exultingly to have called out, *s'katsi* an interjection which is of very extensive import and signification."

This is not the only instance I have learned of lions in Africa being ensnared at the instant they were taking their leap. In the out-houses and waste grounds about farms, where a lion has been upon the watch for some animal and missed it, or where they have other causes to expect him, they set up the figure of a man close by the side of several loaded guns; so that these discharge themselves into the body of the beast, at the very moment he springs or throws himself upon the dressed figure.

As this is executed with so much ease and success, and as they scarcely ever think it worth while in Africa to take lions alive, they seldom give themselves the trouble

of catching them by means of pit-falls. From the most credible accounts I could collect concerning the lion, as well as from what I myself saw, I think I may safely conclude, that this wild beast is often a great coward; that is, very deficient in point of courage comparatively to his strength: on the other hand, however, he at times shews an uncommon degree of intrepidity, of which I will just mention the following instance, as it was related to me.

“A lion had broken into a walled inclosure for cattle through the latticed gate, and done considerable mischief. The people belonging to the farm, were well convinced he would come again by the same way; in consequence of this they stretched a rope directly across the entrance, to which several loaded guns were fastened in such a manner, that they must unavoidably discharge themselves into the lion's body as soon as ever he should push against the cord, as it was expected he would do, with his breast. But the lion, which came in the day-time before it was yet dark, and probably had some suspicions as to the cord, struck it away with his foot; and without betraying the least timidity in consequence of the reports made by the loaded pieces went on steadily and careless of every thing, and devoured the prey it had left untouched before.”

M. DE BUFFON (Tom. IX. p. 7.) tells us, on the authority of MARMOL and THEVENOT, that the lions, which in the more cultivated and inhabited parts of Barbary and India, are used to experience man's superiority sometimes suffer themselves to be intimidated by a few strokes of a stick (and that even by women and children) from carrying off their prey. This agrees with several accounts that I heard at the Cape, of slaves who had had courage enough, with a knife or some other weapon still more trifling to defend their master's cattle, which had been attacked in the dark by a lion.

It is remarkable, that the lion, which, according to many, always kills his prey directly if it belongs to the brute creation, is reported often, although provoked, to content himself with merely wounding the human species; or at least, to wait some time before he gives the fatal blow to the unhappy victim he has got under him. A farmer,

mer, who the year before had the misfortune to be a spectator of a lion's seizing two of his oxen, at the very instant he had taken them from the waggon, informed me, that they immediately fell down dead upon the spot close by each other; though, upon examining the carcases afterwards, it appeared that their backs only had been broken. In several places through which I passed, they mentioned to me a father and his two sons by name, who they said were still living, and who being on foot near a river on their estate in search of a lion, the animal had rushed out upon them, and thrown one of them under his feet; the two others, however, had had time enough to shoot the lion dead upon the spot, and thus he lay almost across the youth so nearly and dearly related to them, without having done him any particular harm.

Near the upper part of *Duyven-boek-rivier*, I myself saw an elderly Hottentot, who at that time (his wounds being still open) bore under one eye and directly upon his cheek-bone, the ghastly marks of a lion's bite, the only chastisement this noble animal had thought it worth his while to inflict upon him for having, along with his master (whom I also knew) and several other Christians, hunted him with great intrepidity, though unsuccessfully. The conversation turned every where in this part of the country upon one BOTA, a farmer and a militia captain, who had lain for some time under a lion, and had received several bruises from the beast, having been at the same time severely bitten by him in one arm, as a memorial to remember him by; but upon the whole, had had his life, in a manner, given him by this generous animal. The man it was said was then alive, in the district of *Artaquas-kloof*.

I know not how to account properly for this merciful disposition of the lion towards mankind. Does it take its rise from this animal's greater respect and veneration for man, as being an equal, or even a greater tyrant than itself among the animal creation? or is it merely for the same caprice, which has sometimes induced it not only to spare the life of men or brute creatures who have been given up to it to feed upon, but even to caress them, and to treat them with the greatest kindness? Whims and antics of this kind have, perhaps, in a great mea-

sure procured the lion the reputation it has for generosity; but I cannot allow this specious name, sacred only to virtue, to be lavished upon a wild beast. Slaves, indeed, and wretches of servile minds, are accustomed to flatter their greatest tyrants with this attribute; but with what shew of reason can this epithet be bestowed upon the most powerful tyrant among quadrupeds, because it does not exercise an equal degree of cruelty at all times?

The cause why the lion does not, like the wolf, tiger, and some other creatures of prey, kill a deal of game or cattle at one time, may perhaps be, that while he is employed in attacking one or two of them, the remainder fly farther away than is agreeable with the natural indolence of this beast to follow them. If we call this generosity, a cat may be at times called *generous* in its conduct to the rats; as I have seen this creature in the fields among a great number of the latter, where she could have made a great havock at once, seize upon a single one only, and run off with it. The lion and the cat also, very much resemble each other, in partly sleeping out, and partly passing away in a quiet and inactive state a great part of the time, in which hunger does not stimulate them to go in quest of their prey.

From what I have already mentioned, and am farther about to relate, we may infer, that it is not magnanimity, as many insist that it is, but an insidious and cowardly disposition, blended with a certain degree of pride, which forms the general character of the lion: and that hunger must naturally have the effect of inspiring so strong and nimble an animal at times, with an uncommon degree of fortitude and courage. Besides, being accustomed always itself to kill its own food, and that with the greatest ease, as meeting with no opposition, and even frequently to devour it reeking and weltering in its blood, it cannot but be easily enraged, and acquire a greater turn for cruelty than for generosity: but, on the contrary, not being accustomed to meet with any opposition, it is not to be wondered at that when it does, it should sometimes be faint-hearted and crest-fallen; and, as I have already observed, suffer it-

self

self to be frightened away with a cudgel. The following is another instance of this fact.

"A yeoman, a man of credibility, (JACOB KOK, of *Zeekoe-rivier*,) told me an adventure he had in these words: One day walking over his grounds with his loaded gun, he unexpectedly encountered a lion. Being an excellent shot, he thought himself pretty sure, in the situation he was in, of killing it, and therefore fired his gun. Unluckily he did not recollect, that the charge had been in it for some time, and was consequently damp; so that his piece hung fire, and the ball falling short, entered the ground close by the lion. He was consequently seized with a panic, and betook himself directly to his heels; but being soon out of breath, and closely followed by the lion, he jumped up on a little heap of stones, and there made a stand, presenting the butt-end of his gun to his adversary, fully resolved to defend his life, as well as he could, to the very utmost. My friend did not take upon him to determine, whether this situation and manner of his frightened the lion or not; it had, however, such an effect upon the animal, that it likewise made a stand: and what was still more remarkable, laid itself down at a few paces distant from the heap of stones, seemingly quite unconcerned. The sportsman, in the mean while, did not venture to stir a step from the spot; besides, in his flight he had the mischance to lose his powder horn. At length, after waiting a full half hour, the lion rose up, and at first went very slowly, and step by step only, as if it had a mind to steal away, but as soon as it got to a greater distance, it began to bound away at a great rate. It is very probable, that the lion, like the hyæna, does not readily venture to attack any creature that makes a stand against it, and puts itself in a posture of defence. It is well known, that it does not, like the hound, find out its prey by the scent, neither does it openly hunt other animals. At least, the only instance ever known of this, is that which I have mentioned already, in page 33. in which it is spoken of as having hunted an *elk-antelope*; though it is very possible, that this wild beast was reduced by extreme hunger to such an extraordinary action. The lion, however, is swift of foot. Two hun-

ters told me, that an imprudent and fool-hardy companion of theirs, was closely pursued by a lion in their view, and very nearly overtaken by it, though he was mounted on an excellent hunter.

This animal has considerable strength. A lion was once seen at the Cape taking a heifer in his mouth; and though the legs of the latter trailed on the ground, yet it appeared to carry her off with the same ease as a cat would do a rat. It likewise leaped over a broad dike with her, without any difficulty. A buffalo, perhaps, would be too cumbersome, for this beast of prey, notwithstanding his strength, to seize and carry off with him in the manner already mentioned. Two yeomen, upon whose credibility I can place some confidence, gave me the following account of this matter.

"Being on a hunting match near *Bosbies-mans-rivier* with several Hottentots, they observed a lion dragging a buffalo from the plain to a wood upon an adjacent hill. They, however, soon obliged it to quit its prey, in order to make a prize of it themselves; and found that this creature had had the sagacity to tear out the large and unwieldy entrails of the buffalo, in order to be able the easier to run off with the fleshy and more eatable part of the carcase. The wild beast likewise, as soon as it observed from the skirts of the wood, that the Hottentots had begun to carry off the flesh to the waggon, frequently peeped out upon them, and that probably with no little mortification." The strength of the lion, however, is said not to be sufficient alone to get the better of so large and strong an animal as the buffalo; but, in order to make it his prey, this fierce animal is obliged to have recourse both to agility and stratagem; inasmuch, that stealing on the buffalo, it fastens upon the nostrils and mouth of the beast with both its paws, and continues squeezing them close together, till at length the poor animal is strangled, wearied out and dies. It was said, that a certain colonist had once an opportunity of seeing a transaction of this kind; and others had cause to conclude, that something of this kind had passed from seeing buffalos, which had escaped from the clutches of lions, and bore evident marks of the claws of these animals about their mouth and nose. They asserted, however,

thority for it, that this furious animal is seldom or ever killed with a single shot.

The hides of lions are looked upon as inferior to, and more rotten than those of cows, and are hardly ever made use of at the Cape, excepting for the same purpose as horses hides. However, I once met with a farmer, who used a lion's hide for upper leathers to his shoes, and spoke much in praise of them, as being pliable and lasting.

The next morning, being the 13th, we were fortunate enough to shoot a buffalo fatter than the former. (For a figure of this animal, vide Plate II. of this volume.) This was a great treat for my Hottentots, and, indeed, for myself, as the flesh of the other was grown putrid in consequence of the warmth of the weather, and the bad quality of the meat itself. Besides, I had now a better opportunity of drawing up a description of this beast, which has hitherto been unknown, and at the same time of making a rough draught of it. Immediately after the report of the gun, we saw the buffalo fall upon his knees; however, he afterwards raised himself up, and ran seven or eight hundred paces into a thicket, and directly upon this, with a most dreadful bellowing, gave us to understand that it was all over with him. All this together formed a spectacle, at which most sportsmen would have been highly delighted to have been present. This creature, as well as most of the larger kind of game, was shot by the Hottentot whom my friend and host at *Sea-cow-river* had sent along with me, by way of being my guide and marksman. Even some of the best huntsmen among the farmers are forced, very frequently to make use of Hottentots by way of bush-hunters; as these latter in their skin cloaks do not attract the attention of the wild beasts, so much as the Christians do in their dress. They are also ready at any time when there is occasion for it, to go bare foot, and crawl softly upon their bellies, till they come within a proper distance of the animal. Besides, when the buffalo is at length irritated, the Hottentots can much easier escape from the threatening danger, than a Christian. I myself, on another occasion, saw two Hottentots run with surprising swiftness, when a buffalo was in pursuit of them.

It was with the greatest discontent on the part of my Hottentots, that I made a draught, and took the dimensions of this buffalo; thus preventing them, in the mean time, from falling aboard of the flesh. However, after I had finished what I was about, they delayed not a moment to cut a few slices off and broil them. They also laid two bones on the fire to broil, for the sake of the marrow. After this they began to take out the entrails, which, according to their testimony, perfectly resembled those of an ox: the buffalo's, however, are much larger, and take up more room, and indeed gave us no little trouble in clearing them away; for this creature's body was full three feet in diameter.

The size of the buffalo was as follows: the length eight feet, the height five and a half, and the fore-legs two feet and a half long; the large hoofs were five inches over; from the tip of the muzzle to the horns measured twenty-two inches. This animal, as may be observed in the plate, very much resembled the common ox in shape; but the buffalo has much stouter limbs, in proportion to its length and height. Their fetlocks also hang nearer to the ground. The horns are remarkable, both in their shape and position; their bases are thirteen inches broad, and are only an inch distance from each other; by which means, a narrow channel or furrow, is formed between them, in a great measure without hair. Measuring them from this furrow, the horns rise up in a spherical form, with an elevation of three inches at most. In this way they extend over a great part of the head, viz. from the nape of the neck to the distance of three and a half inches from the eyes; so that the part from which they proceed, does not occupy a space of less than eighteen or twenty inches in circumference. From hence bending downwards on each side of the neck, and becoming gradually more cylindrical, they each of them form a curve, the convex part of which is turned towards the ground, and the point up in the air, though at the same time it is commonly inclined backwards. The distance between the points of the horns is often above five feet. The horns is black; and their surface to within about a third part measured from the base, is very rough and craggy, with cavities sometimes

times of the depth of an inch. Neither these cavities, nor the elevations which are formed between them, appear to be at all the effect of accident, as there is a tolerable likeness between the excrescences on one horn, and those on the other, though they are very different in different animals. The ears are a foot long, somewhat hanging, and in a great measure covered and defended by the lower edges of the horns. The edges of the ears are notched and shrivelled up in different ways, which probably is occasioned from the wounds these creatures frequently receive in their battles with one another, and from these parts having been torn and rent by the briars and almost impenetrable thickets through which they pass, together with other accidents of that kind. However, several Hottentots have been led to conclude from thence, that the buffalos belonged to certain supernatural beings, who notched them in this manner for their own cattle. In order to give an idea of these beings, they made use of the Dutch term of *duyvel*, which signifies devil.

The hair of the buffalo is of a dark brown colour, about an inch long, harsh, and, on such of the males as are advanced in years, very straggling and thin, especially on the middle of the sides of the belly; hence these animals seem at some distance as if they were begirt with a belt; and what increases this appearance not a little is, that the buffalos are very ready to roll in the mire, a practice in which they take great delight. The hair on the knees in most buffalos is somewhat longer than those on the rest of the body, and lies as it were, in whorls. The eyes are sunk a little within their prominent orbits. This, together with their near situation to the bases of the horns, which hang somewhat over its pendant dangling ears, and its common manner of holding its head inclined to one side, gives the buffalo a fierce and treacherous aspect. The disposition of the animal seems also to correspond with its countenance. Treacherous he may certainly be said to be, as he is wont to hide himself among the trees, and stand there skulking till somebody accidentally comes very near him, when he rushes out at once into the road, and sometimes attacks them. This animal likewise deserves the epithets of fierce and cruel for

It was with the greatest discontent on the part of my Hottentots, that I made a draught, and took the dimensions of this buffalo; thus preventing them, in the mean time, from falling aboard of the flesh. However, after I had finished what I was about, they delayed not a moment to cut a few slices off and broil them. They also laid two bones on the fire to broil, for the sake of the marrow. After this they began to take out the entrails, which, according to their testimony, perfectly resembled those of an ox: the buffalo's, however, are much larger, and take up more room, and indeed gave us no little trouble in clearing them away; for this creature's body was full three feet in diameter.

The size of the buffalo was as follows: the length eight feet, the height five and a half, and the fore-legs two feet and a half long; the large hoofs were five inches over; from the tip of the muzzle to the horns measured twenty-two inches. This animal, as may be observed in the plate, very much resembled the common ox in shape; but the buffalo has much stouter limbs, in proportion to its length and height. Their fetlocks also hang nearer to the ground. The horns are remarkable, both in their shape and position; their bases are thirteen inches broad, and are only an inch distance from each other; by which means, a narrow channel or furrow, is formed between them, in a great measure without hair. Measuring them from this furrow, the horns rise up in a spherical form, with an elevation of three inches at most. In this way they extend over a great part of the head, viz. from the nape of the neck to the distance of three and a half inches from the eyes; so that the part from which they proceed, does not occupy a space of less than eighteen or twenty inches in circumference. From hence bending downwards on each side of the neck, and becoming gradually more cylindrical, they each of them form a curve, the convex part of which is turned towards the ground, and the point up in the air, though at the same time it is commonly inclined backwards. The distance between the points of the horns is often above five feet. The horns is black; and their surface to within about a third part measured from the base, is very rough and craggy, with cavities sometimes

times of the depth of an inch. Neither these cavities, nor the elevations which are formed between them, appear to be at all the effect of accident, as there is a tolerable likeness between the excrescences on one horn, and those on the other, though they are very different in different animals. The ears are a foot long, somewhat hanging, and in a great measure covered and defended by the lower edges of the horns. The edges of the ears are notched and shrivelled up in different ways, which probably is occasioned from the wounds these creatures frequently receive in their battles with one another, and from these parts having been torn and rent by the briars and almost impenetrable thickets through which they pass, together with other accidents of that kind. However, several Hottentots have been led to conclude from thence, that the buffalos belonged to certain supernatural beings, who notched them in this manner for their own cattle. In order to give an idea of these beings, they made use of the Dutch term of *duyvel*, which signifies devil.

The hair of the buffalo is of a dark brown colour, about an inch long, harsh, and, on such of the males as are advanced in years, very straggling and thin, especially on the middle of the sides of the belly; hence these animals seem at some distance as if they were begirt with a belt; and what increases this appearance not a little is, that the buffalos are very ready to roll in the mire, a practice in which they take great delight. The hair on the knees in most buffalos is somewhat longer than those on the rest of the body, and lies as it were, in whirls. The eyes are sunk a little within their prominent orbits. This, together with their near situation to the bases of the horns, which hang somewhat over its pendant dangling ears, and its common manner of holding its head inclined to one side, gives the buffalo a fierce and treacherous aspect. The disposition of the animal seems also to correspond with its countenance. Treacherous he may certainly be said to be, as he is wont to hide himself among the trees, and stand there skulking till somebody accidentally comes very near him, when he rushes out at once into the road, and sometimes attacks them. This animal likewise deserves the epithets of fierce and cruel
for

for it has been observed, that, not satisfied with throwing down and killing the person whom he attacks, he stands over him afterwards, for a long time trampling upon him with his hoofs and heels, and crushing him with his knees, and not only mangles and tears his whole body to pieces with his horns and teeth, but likewise strips off the skin by licking it with his tongue. This, however, he does not do all at once, but at intervals, going away, at times, to some distance from the body. Notwithstanding all this, the buffalo may be hunted; though sometimes he will turn and hunt his pursuer, whose only security in that case is upon the swiftness of his steed. The surest way to escape from him is to ride up some hill; as in this case, the great bulk of the buffalo's body, like that of the elephant, proves a weight sufficient to hinder him from being able to vie with the light and slender horse in swiftness; though, on the contrary, the buffalo, in going downhill, runs much faster than the horse; a fact to which I have been an eye-witness more than once.

It is said the buffalo is of a very hot nature, because, as I am credibly informed, when thoroughly heated in hunting, he throws himself into the first water he meets with, whether fresh or salt. One thing is certain, that he often, and apparently with great pleasure, wallows in the mire; and from this circumstance it is apprehended that he could not, with any prospect of success, be tamed for the yoke, as when weary and warm, he would plunge himself into the nearest water, or play some other tricks.

Mr HEMMY, the depute-governor, had, during my stay at the Cape, endeavoured to tame a buffalo; but it was alledged, that this animal was too wild, and at the same time too strong and ungovernable to be restrained by any yoke or harness whatever; or to be kept in order and subjection by the tame oxen, which were trained for that purpose, and along with which he was to be yoked.

As I returned through *Krakekamma* I saw a buffalocalf, as tame as any of the common calves along with which it was grazing. It had been caught soon after it was brought into the world, having the navel-string hanging to it; but notwithstanding its being so young, it made

made considerable resistance to the people who caught it. A fortnight thereafter it had already acquired so much strength, that the owner of it, a stout lusty man, found it very difficult to lead it along. Indeed, it was somewhat taller, and much stouter than other calves of the same age. Its colour was a very light brown, the hair long and rough, and on the back lying in whirls; in the nape of the neck the hair inclined forwards, while that on the forehead was turned backwards; on the lip, some of it was long and stiff; and indeed, of a considerable length on the whole of the lower jaw, and under the belly. The fore-part of this creature appeared to be low in proportion to the rest of its body; the head was large, and the ears long and hanging; the legs shorter than those of an ordinary calf; and its aspect sulky and treacherous. The owner intended to present it to the governor for his menagerie. For my part, I have not the least doubt of the possibility of breaking buffalos to the yoke, in case the calves are taken very young, and are put to it at an early period, and for a long time together. By a properly adapted sparing diet, and often milking the cows, these animals might, after several generations, lose as much of their fierceness as might be thought necessary, and yet retain so much of their native vigour as to be stronger than the common oxen. It would be a curious experiment, to couple the male or female buffalo with a common bull or cow. The greatest part of the wild buffalo-calves that I have seen, were of a light brown colour, like the tame one I have just described; and the younger they were, the more pale was the colour. I have already observed, under the date of the 9th of this month, with what strength the buffalo pressed into the midst of the closest thickets; in this the beast is assisted by the broad part of its horns, which, at the same time that it serves to pierce through the prickly bushes, is of use in guarding and protecting its eyes.

The flesh of the buffalo is coarse and leanish, but full of juice, and of a high and not disagreeable flavour. The hide is tough and thick, and is in great request with the farmers for thongs and harnesses. The only halters that can be depended upon for securing horses and oxen, are made of it; so that these beasts cannot get loose by

snapping them asunder, which they are otherwise apt to do, when the lions and wolves make their appearance in the neighbourhood. Every such halter should be a finger and a half in breadth, and about three yards long, when they are sold higher up in the country for a fourth part of a rix-dollar each.

The hide of the buffalo we had now shot, after it had been in some degree dressed by my Hottentots, by being stretched out and salted a little, and afterwards half dried, served to make a pair of new four plaited traces for my waggon. We observed, that the ball had hit the lower part of the neck and entered the lungs, where, though it did not appear to have struck against any bone, and though it was alloyed with the usual quantity of tin, it was found to be pretty much flattened. In other buffalos that we shot since, I have at times found the balls, though alloyed with tin, shivered into several pieces against the bones, in the internal parts, or at least very much flattened. It is not, therefore, worth while to set about shooting the buffalo with balls made of lead only, for they will seldom be able to make their way into those parts where they are likely to prove mortal. But besides being possessed of the degree of hardness requisite, a ball should be of a tolerable size, in order to kill so large an animal as the buffalo. The smallest that ought to be used for this purpose, should weigh two ounces and a quarter.

I have mentioned the buffalo, as being an animal hitherto unknown. So, indeed, I presume to call it, as I am the first that has given a description and drawing of it, which I have done in the Swedish Transactions, by the name of the *Bos Casser*. My readers will, perhaps, excuse me for making use, in a great measure, of the same words in both places, as well as for being rather more diffuse and circumstantial here.

In M. DE BUFFON, Tom. XI. p. 416. Tab. 41. we find the horns only engraved, as they were brought from the Cape by the Abbe DE LA CAULLE.

The Abbe DE MANET, Tom. II. p. 129. gives us a few lines concerning a sort of buffalo, which seems to answer to this which I call the *Bos Casser*. Mr PEN-

ANT, II. 107.

WANT, in the last edition of his *Synopsis of Quadrupeds*, Vol. II. p. 28. speaks of this species of buffalo also.

My Hottentots shewed so much diligence and zeal both in cutting up and eating this beast, that the encouragement and stimulation, which is otherwise often requisite to set their sluggish and heavy souls in motion, would on this occasion have been quite superfluous. They then drove the waggon up to the place where the beast lay, and loaded it with the best and fattest parts of the flesh. The raw hide, which was of considerable weight and extent, was tied under the waggon till it should be wanted, and the two remaining legs or marrow-bones were fastened to each side of the body of the waggon. Notwithstanding this, our *Bosbies-men* had each of them loaded themselves with a quantity of slips of the flesh made up into bundles. Thus covered up to the eyes and ears in meat, we made a singular appearance, which might have given any traveller that had happened to pass that way, the idea of a walking flesh-market. As we proceeded on our journey, a swarm of other carnivorous animals in considerable numbers, viz. eagles, falcons, and common hawks, were observed soon afterwards to occupy our places about the buffalo's remains; though it was not till we had got to the distance of a few gun-shots from the spot, that we saw any of them either in the trees or flying about in the air.

We had scarcely proceeded half an *uur* on our road, before we saw a great number of *quaggas*, with a huge fat *elk-antelope*; and besides this, on the open plains, two male buffalos came within seventy paces of us.

It was remarkable enough, that these latter did not appear to observe either us or our waggon for a long while, till we began to make an intolerable noise with laughing and talking; when at length they looked up at us, but staid, nevertheless, a considerable time before they betook themselves to flight.

My Hottentots, who saw I was fond of hunting of different sorts, the chase of flies and butterflies not excepted, thought it very strange that I should now neither shoot these animals myself, nor suffer them to do it. They, however, at length confessed, that I was quite in the right, in consequence of my reminding them, that

they were covered up to the eyes in buffalo's fat; and that the meat with which they had already loaded the waggon, both inside and out, would be quite putrid before they could eat it all up; that they should not put themselves on a level with so voracious a beast as the wolf, of which they had often expressed their hatred and abhorrence on account of its killing and wounding every thing it met with; and lastly, that these buffaloes, if spared at present, and not scared away, might prove extremely useful to somebody else; perhaps, indeed, to us ourselves on our return home. This moderation gained me afterwards much respect from many of the colonists, as with great reason, they were very much discontented with the capricious conduct of several sportsmen, who, solely for the pleasure of shooting, are guilty of wasting the treasures of nature in the most unjustifiable manner; and by unnecessarily destroying the game, spoil their own sport in future, as well as that of others. For when they now and then make a little hunting excursion (as they term it) they seldom or ever return from the pursuit of a herd of game, till they have made a great havock among them, though the carcases are afterwards left to rot on the ground. It is true, at every shot they take they leap from their horses, to discharge their pieces; but mounting again immediately, load their guns, at the same time that they are continuing the pursuit of the gazels. In the mean time, I could not help picturing to my imagination, the pleasure which, on the contrary, such a shot as I had had that day would have given me in the South Sea, when I might have treated myself and my famished mess-mates with some excellent high-flavoured roast beef of buffalo's flesh.

We took the oxen from the waggon, and baited a considerable while at the river *Keusi kunni aati*, which, in the Hottentot language, bears very nearly the signification of *Let not the ugly drink here*. This river, by the colonists, is otherwise called *Little Bosbies-mans river*.

The flesh, as well as the marrow of the buffalo, was in itself very delicate; but both Mr IMMELMAN and myself could not help being disgusted with it at times, as we saw the Hottentots eat it so greedily and immoderately. For whole nights together the flesh-kettle was kept

kept boiling on the fire, and sometimes they broiled some more of the flesh during the intervals. As soon as any one of the Hottentots was awake, he was immediately prepared to eat both boiled and roast. Sleeping or waking, as one may say, they had always either meat or a pipe in their mouths; and besides, as they found leisure and opportunity, viz. the two or three first days after we had shot any game, several of them were particularly careful and diligent in skimming off the fat from the pot. Yet, however assiduous they were in besmearing their bodies with it, I was always forced to exert my authority as their master, in order to make them put a little of it on my shoes and bridles, which would otherwise have been cracked in pieces, or parched up by the dryness of the weather.

My Hottentots were, particularly in the evenings, merry and talkative in their dispositions, and that sometimes in a high degree. I have good reason to believe, that Mr IMMELMAN and I were frequently the subjects of their gibes, jokes, and laughter. As we were persuaded of this, it was just as well for us that we did not understand the language; especially, as the matter thus stood, we could not be more hurt than if we suspected that they abused us in thought only; and in that case, we were not, however, so squeamish as a certain officer, who first punished a soldier for a crime he had been guilty of, and afterwards, merely on the suspicion that he must infallibly have had the impudence to take it amiss, ordered a certain number of lashes to be given him into the bargain.

In the desert particularly, a great deal of management was necessary, in order to keep in favour with the Hottentots; so that these people, who are very much inclined, on every little whim which strikes them, to run away, might not, in that place, desert us. On the other hand, not to give room by too much lenity, for any great degree of neglect and impudence, we were twice forced to try what effect blows would have upon them, and we found that they answered the end exceeding well. Prudence, however, made it necessary, that the offender's crime, (his remissness and neglect of duty for example,) should be represented as being also a great offence against

their own comrades, and punished accordingly ; by which means, together with that of hemp, tobacco, and commendations properly distributed, they were prevented from taking part with the delinquent. Experience having taught us, that the Boshies-men in our service were extremely indolent and entirely independent of me, as long as they had any tolerable quantity of hemp and tobacco for smoking beside them, I grew very sparing in my presents, giving out only a quantity for two or three pipes at a time, and none at all to those who had neglected their duty. When they had no tobacco or hemp, they used to smoke the dry bark of some trees, moss, leaves horse-dung, or that of the rhinoceros ; to which they added, when they could procure it, the stem of some old wooden pipe, strongly impregnated with the oil of the tobacco, that had been smoked in it, cutting it into pieces, in order to render more agreeable, by the delicate flavour of the tobacco, that of the above-mentioned ingredients.

In the places where we remained several days, some of the Boshies-men of our company gave themselves up day and night to perfect repose, without giving themselves the smallest trouble about any thing. I therefore positively refused them the least morsel of tobacco, till they had procured me some uncommon and curious insect or snake. By this scheme I obtained a few scarce articles ; but in general, their sloth was such, that they would not give themselves the smallest trouble to look after any thing of the kind, till they were, as they said, *very hungry for tobacco.*

C H A P. XII.

Journey from Boshies-mans River to Zyammedacka.

THE following morning, being the 14th of December, at five o'clock, we set out on our journey. *Boshies-mans river*, which we had just left, had no current.

went; and though it is very deep in many places, yet it was brackish and had a salt taste, and we were told it was always so in summer. A little farther to the eastward, we had to pass through a valley covered with wood.

This valley is called *Nieu-bout-kloof*, from a sort of tree which it is said excites sneezing, if it be rubbed and then smelled at. We were not so lucky as to discover this tree, but from the description which was given me of it, I should suppose it belonged to the order of *lomentaceæ*. A dried piece of this wood which was shewn to me, had almost wholly lost the property I have just mentioned, nor had it any particular taste. This tree it is said is also to be found at *Bruntjes-boogte*, though it is very scarce.

As it may prove a piece of useful intelligence for future travellers, I must just mention here, that there is good water to be found in a vale called *t'Kur-t'keija-t'kei-t'ka-sibina*, somewhat more than half a mile to the left of the road, to which we sent our oxen and horses at noon to water, by a road that went over two hills, while we halted to refresh ourselves. We arrived in the evening at *Hassagai-bosch*. The other part of the road, as well as the adjacent country, was full of steep hills; so that we were often obliged to lock the wheels of the waggon, and to dismount at the same time, and lead our horses over the precipices.

This day, though absent, an honour was conferred upon me at *Upsal* far beyond my most sanguine expectations, viz. the degree of doctor in physic, an honour increased by the flattering *proclamation* with which it was accompanied, I must take this opportunity to render my grateful acknowledgements for it, to the CHEVALIER VON LINNE, professor J. SIDREN the promoter of it, who at that time composed the whole faculty of medicine, and who by their kind recommendations procured permission for this purpose of the most illustrious chancellor. This instance of a Swede, though at a great distance in a remote desert, being present in the recollection of his countrymen, will, probably, be no small incitement to such of our compatriots, as may travel in future for the promoting

noting of science; for which cause, I thought proper to take notice of it in this place.

The next morning early, being the 15th day, we left *Hassagai-bosch*, which in itself is nothing but a little insignificant grove, and owes its name to a kind of tree to be found here, as well as in many other parts of the country. In the valley below, the water is tolerably good, though very scarce and stagnating. The surrounding district was of the species called *Sour*. We arrived at noon at *Nieuw Jaars-drift*, where the thermometer stood at 80 in the shade. The water here was likewise good, and in some places very deep. The neighbouring country had a delightful appearance, being adorned with great numbers of the *mimosa nilotica*; a tree we have had frequent occasion to mention before, and upon which we at this time caught a great many curious insects. My fellow-traveller, while he was running with his net in pursuit of a butterfly, was very near falling into a pit, in which a sharp pole was stuck upright; and in that case, would very probably have shared the same fate as our insects, by being himself spitted through the body. This pit-fall was, in all probability, dug by some of the Caffres or Hottentots wandering about these parts, in order to catch a very different sort of game.

In the evening we reached *Kurekoiku*, or *t' Kurekoi t' Ku*. Upon our road thither, we observed a great number of buffalos. From among these I singled out (with a design to hunt them on horseback) a herd consisting of seventy or eighty animals, old and young together. I took with me only a light gun loaded with a leaden ball, my design being merely to get a piece of roast veal, which, for the sake of change, we longed for exceedingly. But I was disappointed in my plan; for the old ones surrounded the calves, so as wholly to shelter them from me when I jumped from my horse, in order to discharge my piece. Some of the oldest among them particularly, putting themselves in a posture of defence, advanced to meet me; by which means, the others had an opportunity to get farther off: at last, however, I fired among them, when immediately, on hearing the report of my piece, they all made a full pause, and stared at me. I was not at that time perfectly apprized of the nature
and

and danger of buffalo-hunting, otherwise I should scarcely have dared to set about it in the confident manner I then did; but fortunately for me, the ball hurt none of them; otherwise, probably, the whole herd of them would have turned round and pursued me down the craggy hill, up which I had just before hunted them close at their heels; in which case, I should not have escaped so easily.

The hunters do not think it is possible to kill the game while on their horses, both because their pieces are weighty, and the motion occasioned by their horses, prevents their taking aim; and chiefly because both the horse and its rider are somewhat in a tremor, by means of the violent exercise they have just before undergone in pursuing the game; while, on the contrary, by jumping from their horses, and supporting their piece with the ram-rod, in the manner already described, the sportsman acquires a great degree of steadiness as well as certainty in his aim.

We remained at *Kurekoiku* till the evening of the 16th, for the purpose of washing our linen ourselves and drying it in the sun. We were, in fact, at that time very ill provided with this article, as at our first setting out we disposed rather too lavishly of this and our other apparel to our Hottentots. Our principal inducement to this liberality was, together with our clothes, to get quit of a colony of disgusting animals, with which our driver in particular had stocked our waggon, in consequence of his sitting in the front seat. We afterwards did not permit the Hottentots to wear any other clothes but their own pellisses, as in these the vermin kept themselves more quiet, and were more readily picked up by the Hottentots, in which case, (the broiling part excepted,) they shared the same fate as the prisoners taken by the Cannibals. Whether they did this, however, in order to gratify their taste or revenge, is a question I willingly leave the philosopher to determine, who, shut up in his chamber, explains every natural phenomenon from certain accidental occurrences. At least, the Hottentots themselves gave us no insight into this matter; for when we proposed this difficulty to them, they gave us no other answer but, *So maar, Baas! This is our way, Master!*

In the mean while one may perceive from this, that men once sunk into a certain state of nastiness, degradation and misery, will not only easily be familiarised with it, but likewise, without the intervention of any other particular cause, permit themselves to be more and more debased.

However, the two Hottentots, whom I had in my service, appeared, by their anxiety to earn and wear our European clothes, already disposed to rise from the inactive and debased condition into which they were plunged. It even flattered their vanity, that by means of the European dress we had given them, they might, perhaps, be supposed to be a kind of bastards, and consequently might be imagined to have some European blood in their veins. They had not, notwithstanding, any idea of being careful of their clothes, but wore them even in the desert as long as they would hang together on their backs; and, indeed, until, in order to prevent the vermin they were covered with from spreading any farther, we forced them to throw them entirely away.

The same day on which they arrived at *Bruntjes Hoogte*, where they hoped to meet with a number of smart girls of their own nation, they painted their noses, their cheeks, and the middle of their foreheads, with soot. A young Boshies-man, the only young man amongst all those whom I engaged in my service at *Zondags-rivier*, adorned himself in the same manner. This instance excepted, I could not observe that they even were at any pains to insinuate themselves into the good graces of the fair sex; but am rather ready to suspect, that the first advances in the way of courtship, chiefly came from the woman's side.

While we were this day busied in pursuing insects, botanizing and washing, several of our Hottentots went a hunting: and in the course of their sport, had come within fifty or sixty paces of two lions, which were lying on the ground, but they had sufficient prudence not to fire at them. The lions, also, as soon as they observed the Hottentots, had stolen away as softly as them. The height of the thermometer, was 84 degrees at noon.

We departed in the evening, and in our road met with and hunted a considerable number of buffalos; one of them, which was wounded by a ball in the breast, escaped

escaped from us though closely pursued; but a female which got a shot in the cheek, quite through a large vein, fell at last, after having run to a considerable distance.

My friend had this day an opportunity of noticing an amorous combat between two tiger-cats, and one of our Hottentots caught four ostrich chicks alive, which we fed for several days with succulent plants, till they died in consequence of the jolting of the waggon.

We reached *Hevy* that same evening, and there baited all night. It was nothing but a rocky valley, in which there were several pits of stagnated and brackish water. From the flat top of a hill there dropped a little fresh water, of which we could scarcely collect a sufficient quantity to quench our own thirst. All the plants around (except the succulent ones) were as dry as hay.

At five in the morning of the 17th, the thermometer stood at 60, and at two in the afternoon at 80 degrees. Towards evening we departed, and before night reached *Quammedacka Well*.

This place lies at the distance of two hours (uurs) from that which we had just left. A boggy pool of water, which at that time was partly dried up, from twenty to twenty-five feet across, was the only watering-place to be met with in a tract of country of considerable extent; upon which account this was so much the more frequented by wild beasts, and smelt so strong and rank of the buffalos, rhinoceroses, and other animals that wallowed in it, that, at the distance of several feet, our cattle, and particularly our horses, shuddered exceedingly at it. Their thirst, however, compelled them at length to sip a little of what was collected in the prints made by the feet of the larger kind of animals. On a piece of ground a little higher than this bog, we observed traces of a water-spring gently trickling down, and dug round about it. From hence we got, it is true, some water not quite so rancid as the former, though it still retained a perfectly muddy taste, and a blueish colour, leaving on each side of the linen, through which we strained it, a deep and indelible stain of mud. On this occasion I could not help being struck with the observation, that custom and the characteristic turn of any nation, will commonly

A VOYAGE TO THE

commonly get the better of the plainest dictates of common sense. Mr IMMELMAN my friend pertinaciously followed the laudable Dutch fashion of thoroughly wiping the basons or vessels with a clean towel, every time that water was brought in them; though at the same time they were perfectly clean, or at the most, perhaps, were stained with the hundredth part of a grain of sugar, or else of coffee or tea-grounds, and he was just preparing to drink dirt out of them, I may say by the ounce.

This evening about two thousand *spring-boks* coming to drink out of the well, by the side of which we had pitched our tents, halted at the distance of two hundred paces, in order to take a view of us; when I fired among them with a long gun, which was loaded with three small bullets. And although one of these balls, as I afterwards discovered, hit a doe, and went quite through her, so as to pierce her liver, diaphragm, and one lobe of her lungs, yet she ran some hundred paces, before she began to totter, immediately after which she fell. She soon rose again, however, and skipped to the distance of one hundred and fifty paces farther, till she was caught fast in a thicket, where we overtook her and killed her. With a larger ball, very probably, the spring-bok would not be found so hard to kill, especially if it should hit any of the greater blood-vessels.

This animal, which the colonists call *spring-bok*, a Dutch word signifying the *leaping* or *bounding* goat, I have already mentioned in the Swedish Transactions for 1780. I must not however, omit here, the description, of so remarkable an animal.

If this creature is not the handsomest, it is at least one of the handsomest gazels in the universe; being, like the generality of the gazel kind, distinguished by its beautiful fiery eyes; so that, in some parts of the east, it is considered, and very justly, as the greatest compliment which can be paid to a handsome woman, to tell her that her eyes are like the gazel's. *Vid. Prosp. Alpin. Hist. Egypt. (L. 232.)*

MOSES (in Numbers, Chap. XIV.) seems by his *Dischen* to have this animal in his eye, as the Septuagint translates this word by *pygargus*; the meaning of which (*uro-pigium album*, or *white rump*) best corresponds with this species,

cies of gazel. PLINY (VIII. 53.) also mentions a pygargus; so does JUVENAL (Sat. XI. ver. 138.) To my taste, this was the handsomest gazel I had seen in Africa, as, indeed, it was the most common; which I infer from the circumstance of my having seen it in these places in much greater numbers, than all the other species together. I had indeed, hitherto, seen only one of them, in their wild state, viz. on the plain near *Bosmans rivier*; but between the two *Visch-riviers*, I have seen them spread over the plains in herds of different magnitudes, as far as the eye could reach; and putting together what I have observed in the course of a day's journey on horseback, their numbers amounted to some thousands. Those that I shot among to-day, were collected close together into one herd, and, on hearing the report of my piece, immediately formed a line, at the same time making a circular movement, as if they meant to surround us, but instantly afterwards flew off to a different side to that which they came from. In the *Bolle-Velds*, as they are named, these animals are found in vast numbers, and frequently at *Roodc-Zand*. A great many of this species are kept in the governor's menagerie. And although it is as beautiful as common, there has not been as yet any tolerable drawing given of this animal; and much is still wanting, to perfect its history and description. I cannot help on this occasion, expressing my astonishment, that the *mammalia*, or quadrupeds, the chief branch of the principal kingdom of nature, a branch, indeed, which comprehends man himself, should be so little known, and notwithstanding so little studied by him. Lions, tigers, and other wild beasts, at least in Africa, by the neglect of this study have, without controul, committed their ravages in the animal kingdom. Nay, they have, as we have already remarked, confined man himself within certain bounds, so that he cannot even help trembling for fear of them in his own habitation.

With respect to this gazel in particular, it deserves, as indeed do all the works of the Creator, to be considered with all the precision and minuteness of which the subject is capable, that from the contemplation of it, we may

learn the better to know and adore the Great Master of the Universe.

It appears, indeed, that self-love, which generally has so great a sway with us, should induce us to take this step; for these gazels ought, for the advantage of mankind in general, to be made tame, and tended in the places where they now go out to graze exposed to the attacks of lions, of which animals, indeed, they appear to be the peculiar property; and may be very properly termed, according to the expression of the Hottentots, their flocks of sheep. In the mean time, it is necessary to give previously to this, a tolerably accurate description of this animal, and lay before the public what information I have acquired concerning its manners and nature.

It is two feet and a half in height; from the tip of the nose to the horns are seven inches; from the horns to the ears two; from the ears to the tail three feet three inches; and the tail itself somewhat less than a foot in length; the ears are six inches and a half long; the horns, measuring along their curvatures, seven inches; their thickness at the base is two inches three quarters; and their distance from each other at that part one. From that they separate, as is shewn in the figure (vide Vol. II. Plate V.) more and more, till at about three-fourths of their length they are about five inches distant from each other, when they turn inwards; so that their tips at last come within three inches and a half of each other. This seems to me to be the most common way, in which their horns are bent. In the same animals of this sort in the governor's menagerie I remarked, however, that they varied greatly, insomuch that some of their horns were bent forwards, like the *nager* of BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. XXXIV. In others again, they were turned back. This is the more necessary to be mentioned, as otherwise, by such variations in the horns, zoologists might be led to make several species out of one. In the same manner, I beg leave to observe on this occasion, that in both sexes of this species of gazel, the horns are alike both in size and shape; as M. PALLAS, *Spicil. Zoolog.* I. p. 10. misled by KÄMPFER, supposes the female to have very short horns, or none at all. Indeed, it was from

from a female that I made the foregoing description. This same female I got stuffed, and it lies at present in the cabinet of the Royal Academy. In answer to the question proposed in the *Spicil. Zoolog. Fascicul. XI. p. 15.* I will only mention, that the Compt^e de BUFFON was entirely ignorant of this gazel; and that the *koba's* horns, as well as those of the *txeiran* (vide *Fascicul. I. p. 10.*) are, besides their position, too large ever to have belonged to this gazel.

To conclude, the horns of this beautiful creature are of a deep black colour; and from their bottom to somewhat above the middle, are ornamented with rings raised above the surface. From hence they are quite plain and smooth, ending in a sharp point; which, as before said, are turned inwards. The rings here mentioned are about fourteen in number, being raised a line or two above the surface, and inclining, as it were, forwards and downwards. On the sides, where the horns are flattened a little, these rings are less remarkable; and between each ring there is a number of small longitudinal *striæ*. There are no *pori ceriferi* below the eyes of this animal.

The prevailing colour in this animal is brown of various shades, or a light rust-colour. This colour also occupies a space of two inches in the forehead, directly in the front of the horns, and goes between them over the nape of the neck, and all the neck itself, a narrow slip in the front of it only excepted; in the same manner it extends over the back, the sides, the outside of the haunches, and the whole hinder leg; but forms only a narrow stripe in the front of the fore-leg. For the breadth of an inch or two, the posterior moiety of the ridge on the back is white, which colour is continued over and surrounds the anus, the inside of the haunches, and the whole belly, the hind part, inside and outside of the fore-legs, the chest, and the fore part of the ribs, whence it goes forward in a narrow stripe all along the neck, extending over the remainder of the head, except a dark-brown list on each side, of an inch in breadth, which passes from the corner of the mouth over the eyes to the horns. A stripe of an inch and a half in breadth, of the same deep umber-colour, reaches from the shoulders

A VOYAGE TO THE

to the haunches, forming thus a boundary between the snowy whiteness of the belly, and the rusty colour of the sides. The hairs also, which surround the white part of the back and of the anus, are somewhat darker brown than the others.

The tail, at least at the lower part of it, is no thicker than a goose-quill, and it is quite bare below, being covered on the outside only with very short hair; excepting, indeed, towards the tip, where there are a few dark-brown hairs from one to two inches and a half in length, which are disposed in the manner exhibited in the plate.

The ears are ash-coloured, in most places covered with very short hairs, and in some quite bare; the fore-part of the root of the ears, and all their edges, are covered with a quantity of fine light-grey hairs. On the inside, they are almost bare. The eye-brows, and a few short whiskers with which this animal is furnished, are black. The hairs are in general very fine and thick, their length being about half an inch. But the dark-brown hairs, which border on the white on the hind part of the back, are from two to three, or three and a half inches long. The white hairs, which grow nearest the dark-brown ones just mentioned are about the same length; but the middle part of the white stripe, consists of short hair like the rest of the body.

The design of the long brown hairs is in general, and in a great degree, to cover the dazzling white part of the back just mentioned, the brightness and purity of which seems to be thus preserved; so that the animal, by the extending of this colour to the breadth of six, eight, or nine inches, may, on certain occasions, be able to make a more beautiful appearance.

This expansion is particularly occasioned by the animal taking a high leap, which it never fails to do when pursued. With no other view than that of contemplating this peculiar property of the *spring-bok*, I have often ridden full speed after whole flocks of them; when it was no less entertaining than curious, to see them jumping over each others heads to the height of two yards, and, indeed, at times much higher. Some of them would take three or four high leaps together in immediate succession, but did not appear to get a whit faster

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

faster forward than the others; which, in the mean time, kept on with an even running pace, only now and then a moderate leap or two. With their highest leaps they made still less progress. In this situation too they seemed to hang, as it were, for some time in the air, in order, probably to look over their shoulders at their pursuers, with a kind of ostentation, and at the same time, by the expansion of the white part of their backs to manifest a kind of menace, which may, perhaps, have the intended effect upon any other opponent than man.

The situation of their bodies, when making the highest leaps, was various. At times we observed these animals with their backs bent convex, their heads downwards, and all their four feet brought close together. At other times their backs were hollow, so that their bellies bulged out beneath; by which means the nape of their necks and their rumps were brought pretty near each other, while the fore and hind feet were on that account so much the more apart.

When pursued, these animals permit themselves to be soon dispersed, so that in a short time I had only two or three of them to pursue. Otherwise, as soon as the whole flock had got to some distance, they would all make a stand, and turn about to look at their pursuers. It is pretty nearly in this position that the animal is represented in the annexed engraving, at the same time somewhat expanding the white hairs on the back and rump.

To conclude, *spring-boks* are extremely swift of foot; so that a good horse, and one that is by no means deficient in point of wind, is necessary to overtake them. In other respects they are by no means shy, sometimes permitting a sportsman either on foot or on horseback to come within reach of them. Their flesh is very palatable, and has a more juicy and delicate taste, though at the same time less flavour than that of other gazels. I was told that in drougthy years, the *spring-boks* repair in incredible numbers to the southward, advancing towards the colonies at the Cape, and keeping straight forwards on the road till the sea stops them, when they turn back to go home by the same road as they came, and generally with several lions at their heels.

Mr PERWANT names this animal the *white antelope*. M. PALLAS calls it the *antelope pygargus*. The *Systeme Nature* mentions an animal by the name of *capra cervicapra*; and it might be imagined, that the spring-bok was meant by it, as a drawing by M. HOUSTON is referred to, in some measure answerable to it; but other circumstances seem to interfere with this idea, particularly the figure in DODART, (which, notwithstanding, is referred to as being a good one,) not bearing the least resemblance to this creature. The name of *cervi-capra* besides, as denoting an intermediate genus between the deer and the goat, may be applied to the whole race of gazels or antelopes.

Having shot the *spring-bok*, we were forced to remain at so miserable a watering-place as this *Quammedacka* five nights longer, as the two horned (*rhinoceros bicornis*) was alledged to have its chief residence in these parts. The earnest desire I entertained to shoot this remarkable animal was so much the greater, and the less to be wondered at, as it had hitherto been only distinguished by naturalists by the double horns, which at various times had been brought to Europe, and preserved in different cabinets.

KOLBE, 'tis true, pretends to have seen the *rhinoceros bicornis*; but as he not only gives a fabulous account of it, but in the drawing he has given of it, he has represented the tail almost as bushy as that of a squirrel, it is certain, that this author, on this as well as many other points, is merely the echo of certain ignorant inhabitants of the Cape, whose information cannot be relied on. It was so much the more anxious to anatomise the *one-horned rhinoceros*, as the investigation of the internal parts of the one horned animal had been entirely neglected, though this creature had been more than once brought to *Portugal*, *France* and *England*, and had been kept there for some time alive; and upon the whole, has been tolerably well drawn and described, particularly by Dr PARSONS, in the *Philosophical Transactions*. The reader may see, also, on this subject, an extract of my journal, in the *Swedish Transactions* for 1778, p. 307. with a figure of the rhinoceros. With what success my wishes were attended, I shall now proceed to mention.

On

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

On the 18th of December at seven in the morning the thermometer stood at 60 degrees; at three in the afternoon it had risen to 84. I had this day a good opportunity to shoot several scarce and uncommon small birds, which in this arid district, where water was so rare, were obliged to come hither in the hottest part of the day, and risk their lives for a few drops of water, which they were in need of, both for themselves and for the young brood they had left in their nests. Though they were unavoidably frightened away by my gun, and indeed some of them wounded by the shot, and at the same time they could but too well see their destroyer, yet they came again, hopping by little and little down to the water-side, in order to dip their bills into it with all speed, for the sake of quenching their vehement thirst; with a continued chirping seeming all the while to bewail their distressed situation, and at the same time to upbraid me with my cruelty. This sight, affecting as it was of itself, ought at this time to have made a still greater impression upon me, because on account of the heat of the weather and the bad quality of the water I had to drink, I felt a thirst little inferior to theirs. "Yet, reasoned I with myself, on the contrary, what a trifle are a few birds compared with the populous fortified towns, which, merely from a lust of dominion, my superiors make no conscience of afflicting with hunger and thirst both, in the highest degree!" and thus proceeded inventing many specious arguments, which cost several more birds their lives; and all this, merely with the expectation of finding among them some one that was rare and curious. So prone are men to perpetrate acts of tyranny and cruelty, and at the same time to invent excuses for their conduct.

The roaring of a lion awakened us about the middle of the following night, which brought to our remembrance, that we might be as trifling in the eye of these ravenous beasts, as the birds I have just mentioned are in those of naturalists. Our oxen and horses seemed now to be much more disquieted than they were on a former occasion, when they heard several lions roaring at one time; nor did our dogs now venture to bark, but with their tails between their legs crept close to the Hottentots;

tots; who on this occasion were very active in stirring up the fire and keeping up a blaze, as they considered it certain that there was a lion at that juncture observing us at no great distance, and suspected that it would not leave the place without paying us a visit. As they likewise thought that the eyes of the lion could be observed at a pretty good distance in the dark, they looked very attentively for them, in order that they might discover from which side they had to expect the wild beast, and make ready to receive it accordingly.

Mr IMMELMAN's situation and mine was very dangerous; this gentleman, actuated by motives of convenience rather than prudence, had chosen it the preceding evening. We had left our waggon, as being at that time too hot and sultry a place to sleep in; and made our beds on the opposite side of the very same bush, near which the Hottentots had encamped themselves around a large fire. We had also till this moment slept there close by the side of each other, and of our fire-arms; but besides the danger to be apprehended from scorpions and serpents, and the inconvenience of reposing on a plot of ground which was uneven and full of stumps of trees, we found it more adviseable to creep close into the bush, and keep our pieces ready in our laps; for to move at this time from hence to the waggon would have been extremely dangerous, and to push in among the Hottentots near the fire would have had a cowardly appearance, and, indeed, would have been, without any metaphor, a dirty piece of business. During all this time the lion, according to all appearance, had that very night drank out of the well, which was scarcely a stone's throw from us; though it was either not sufficiently hungry, or else had not courage enough to attack us.

The thermometer was at 60 degrees on the 19th, and the same day at twelve o'clock it rose to 84, and at three in the afternoon to 95, being exposed under the tilt of the waggon. I found a kind of *purslain* about this spot, somewhat tougher than the common cultivated sort, and having very small leaves one or two inches in length, and those of a light green colour, (*foliis linearibus, marginib. ad racid. revolutis, caule herbaceo, superius subquadrangl.*) As I had brought a pint and a half of vinegar with me, left

we

we should have been seized with an inflammation of the brain, proceeding from our heads being struck by the perpendicular rays of the sun, I put a small quantity of it, together with a little sugar, to the above-mentioned herb, in order to treat myself with a little salad, which, however, was tough enough, and ate much like grass. One of my Boshies-men, who saw me make ready this dish, by signs gave me to understand, that I began at the wrong end of the plant, and dug up the root of it, which, though I ate it raw, was better tasted than the plant itself; being in shape somewhat like a carrot, and of a white colour, a palm and a half long, and an inch and a half in diameter, (*susiformis, albid. sesquipalm. diametro sesquimerciali.*)

I learned from this Hottentot, on another occasion, who, contrary to the custom of his nation, was very communicative, that the root of the *da-s'kai*, (vid. p. 20. of this Volume) a shrub of the *mesembryanthemum* kind pretty frequent here, eaten raw, was, indeed, very well-tasted, yielding a sweetish substance, which may be sucked or otherwise separated from the more woody and fibrous parts in which it was contained. I set the more value upon this discovery, as some events might easily happen, which might make it requisite for us to have recourse to this plant, in order to keep us from starving. The colonists of Africa, who are not by far so forward to investigate the virtues of the plants of this country, as by their continual encroachments to increase their property in the country itself, were till now ignorant of the use of this root; neither were the Hottentots, who followed me from *Zwellendam*, acquainted with it; and the Boshies-men themselves were at this time too indolent to dig for the root, when, as it were, they could gorge themselves with flesh.

The Hottentot who was our best shot, had got up this morning before day-break, to go a hunting, together with two of the others; one of whom was constantly his armour-bearer, in order that he himself, being free from the incumbrance of his arms, might have a steadier hand, and be more at liberty, when he found it necessary to creep on his hands and feet and discharge his piece, or else in cases of danger to make a precipitate retreat from the

the vengeance of the enraged animal. Also at different times, he sent the man who carried his arms to reconnoitre the beast, and follow its traces.

The three Hottentots I mentioned that went out in the morning, returned in the evening quite fatigued, and sat down by the well to cool themselves. I enquired at them several times, if they had killed any thing? to which, after some time, they replied, "to be sure there was a great scarcity of game in these parts;" and at last gave me indirectly to understand, that they had shot two rhinoceroses. I mention this trifling incident in so particular a manner, as it affords an instance of that species of reserve peculiar to the Hottentot nation, which several colonists had told me of, and I myself have also experienced. For instance, when any thing remarkable occurs, a Hottentot endeavours if possible, to avoid mentioning it for some days; and at length when he does speak of it, it is with a kind of circumlocution, or, as the colonists call it, with a *drain*, a sort of twist or winding. And indeed, very often, the Hottentot comes out with his intelligence so late, that instead of being of any use, it serves only to tease one. I was, however, in the mean time, extremely well pleased with the news of the rhinoceroses being shot; and wished that my Hottentots had only been so kind as to have told me sooner, that I might have gone back with them and seen the animals alive. However, I have several times since had an opportunity of this kind.

Early in the morning of the 20th, Mr IMMELMAN and I, rode to the spot where the rhinoceroses lay, attended by four of our Hottentots.

We saw in our road a great number of *quaggas* and *hartbeests*, and at the same time pursued a *wood-swine*, but spent our time principally in reconnoitring a herd of *elk-antelopes* (antelope oryx, Vol. II. Plate I,) so that we did not arrive at the spot where the rhinoceroses lay till ten o'clock.

It was about the same time in the day before that these beasts were killed, each of them with one single shot, which penetrated into the very middle of their lungs. They lay at the distance of about a mile and a half from each other, both of them being prostrate on their

their belly and knees, with their hind legs brought forwards, and supporting their bodies on each side. The first thing I did was to draw and take the dimensions of the lesser of these animals in this position, which, from several others that I had afterwards an opportunity of seeing alive, I altered to a walking attitude.

In order the more easily to form an idea of the shape of this animal, and the mutual proportion of its parts, the reader may turn to the figure annexed in Plate III. Vol. II. For this purpose he must represent to himself the lesser of these beasts, seven feet high, eleven feet and a half long, and twelve feet in the girth. And besides this, when he considers, that, with respect to size, it ranks among four-footed animals the third from the elephant; and, excepting the horns, has hitherto been wholly unknown, with other circumstances which will readily occur to his reflection, he will, perhaps, in some degree, be able to conceive, what a feast the sight and examination of this animal must have been to a naturalist.

The circumstance which first and principally excited my attention was, that in the hide of this beast there were none of those plaits and folds, which we find in the descriptions and figures published of the *rhinoceros bicornis*, and which give it the appearance of being covered with a harness. It was only on the hide of the lesser of these animals that we could observe a small fold or plait, and that merely at the nape of the neck; but this appeared to proceed from the position in which we found it, viz. with the head leaning against the ground, by which means this part was thrown somewhat backwards.

Considering it in other respects, the hide was an inch and a half thick on the back, but somewhat thicker on the sides, though less compact there. The surface of it was scabrous and knotty, and not much differing from that of the elephant, but of a closer texture; and extremely hard when it is dry. It was of an ash-colour, excepting about the groin, where the skin is not so thick by a good deal, but is almost quite smooth, and of the colour of a man's flesh.

The muzzle or nose converges to a point, not only above and beneath, but also very perceptibly on the sides, nearly as it does in the tortoise. The upper lip is some-

what

what longer than the lower. The eyes are small, and sunk in the head.

Though by others, the horns have been diffusely described, yet, in order that the reader may form a just and proper idea of them, it is necessary in this place to make various additions to the descriptions given already. They are of the same shape, and in some measure of the same size in both sexes; yet it seemed to me, that the size of them was not always in proportion to the body. Neither, indeed, is there any constant proportion observable between the foremost horn and the hindmost, though the former is always the largest of the two.

The hindmost, especially in the old ones, is most commonly noticed to be worn away in different parts, which is never the case in the foremost and larger one. This confirms, in some measure, the assertion of the Hottentots and the colonists, that the rhinoceros uses the shorter one only for digging up the various roots, which are said to constitute great part of its food; it being endued with the power of turning the larger horn at that time, on one side out of the way. I was even informed, that in the live rhinoceros the horns were so loose and moveable, that when the animal walks carelessly along, one may see its horns waggle about, and hear them clash and clatter against each other. What appears to add farther confirmation to this account, as to the truth of which, however, I am not without my doubts in many respects, is an excavation or cavity in the base of the horns; particularly that of the foremost, which, like a glenoid cavity, by means of certain articulations, is adapted to, and incloses a round protuberance of the scull. It was with much difficulty that we cut the horns away from the cranium through the sinews and cartilages, by means of which they were attached to it, and of which the remains are still to be seen on the horns I have brought home with me. Had I previously had the smallest hint of the horns being moveable, I certainly should not have neglected to investigate the degree of force with which the muscles and tendons, intended for the strengthening of the joint, and keeping the horn steady and erect, were capable of acting. Of the elder of the rhinoceroses which we had just shot, and whose horns I have

have preserved in the cabinet of the Royal Academy, the hindmost horn is very perceptibly much worn away. I have also found the same appearance on another rhinoceros-horn, which was put up for sale at the Cape. But in the younger animal, which I dissected, and which I allude to particularly in the present description, no marks of this kind were visible. The shape of the rhinoceroses-horns are generally conical, with the tips inclined somewhat backwards, as is shewn in the annexed plate; and may be seen still more distinctly in a figure given by Mr KLEIN, which represents a pair of rhinoceros-horns of the natural size.

As to their substance and texture, these horns appear to consist of parallel horny fibres, the extreme points of which on the lower half, especially on the posterior part of the foremost horn, and on the greater part of the hindmost, project in many places; so that the surface in those parts is full of inequalities, and in some places feels as rough as a brush. The upper part of the horns is smooth and plain, like those of oxen.

The anterior horn belonging to the lesser of the rhinoceroses that we had shot, was a foot long, and five inches over at the base. This horn, on the larger of these animals was eighteen inches long, and seven inches in diameter measured at the same part. This rhinoceros, however, did not exceed the other in bulk, in proportion to the size of its horns. Indeed, in the cabinet of the Royal Academy of Sciences, there is a pair of horns preserved belonging to the *rhinoceros bicornis*, the foremost of which is twenty-two inches in length, and the hindmost sixteen. The distance between these horns is hardly two inches. They also differ from the horns I saw in Africa, and from those I brought with me, in being of a lighter colour and straight, and at the same time flat on the sides; so that the hindmost horn in particular, has pretty sharp edges on the upper part, both before and behind. These horns most probably came from the northern parts of Africa, as they were purchased at Naples by Baron EMANUEL DE GEER during his travels, and were sent by him to his father, the late Marissal DE GEER, as an additional ornament to his noble museum, together with which they were presented

by the Marshall's illustrious widow to the Royal Academy of Sciences.

This animal may be said to be wholly destitute of hair, though there are a few dark bristly hairs about an inch long scattered on the edges of the ears, with a very few round about and between the horns. This is also the case at the tip of the tail. This part of the animal is about an inch thick, diminishing by degrees from the root to the tip, which is somewhat enlarged in the fore part, and particularly in the back part, and at the same time rounded off, but is flattened at the sides. It is directly on the edges, produced by this conformation, that there are some strong stiff hairs an inch, or an inch and a half in length to be seen. Such of them as stand towards this creature's hard and rough body, are visibly worn down and stunted.

As may be seen in the figure, the feet are not much wider than the legs. In the fore parts they are furnished with three hoofs each, which do not project much, and of which the middlemost is the largest and most circular. Like those of the elephant, the soles of the feet are covered with a thicker and more callous skin than the other parts; and, if we except the edges, (which are composed of the hoofs) together with a fissure in the heel, are somewhat of a circular form.

I chose the lesser of the rhinoceroses for the purpose of making the dissection, as well as a description and drawing of this animal. I and my people, making five in all, were not able to stir the carcase, when, with an intention to get at it with the greater convenience, we endeavoured to lay it on its back. This, however, proceeded in a great degree from the laziness of my Hottentots, and their unwillingness to assist me. In the position, therefore, in which this unwieldy creature lay, we cut up its left side, and took a large slip from off its thick hide. This we could not do without much trouble, and repeatedly sharpening our knives.

Though the animal had lain above twenty-four hours, and an ecchymosis was formed about the wound, yet the flesh had as yet been preserved from putrefaction by the thickness of the hide. We broiled a piece of this flesh immediately, which tasted somewhat like pork, but was,

in my opinion, much coarser. In the mean time, we cut through the ribs with an axe, and what with hacking and tearing together, we at last made shift to empty the cavity of the abdomen. I made drawings and descriptions of these parts, and took the dimensions of them with as much haste as possible; after which we took out the diaphragm, and a naked Hottentot crept into the carcase, in order to pluck out the lungs and heart.

As the animal had received its death from a shot in the large blood-vessels of the lungs, these parts were already affected with some degree of putridity. The lungs, liver and milt therefore, had not been long exposed to the open air, before they began to swell and effervesce. And indeed, the violent heat of the sun at noon, together with the thirst we suffered, and the stench of the carcase, rendered this operation in a short time extremely dangerous as well as disgusting. In the mean time, I made the following observations.

The viscera of the *rhinoceros bicornis*, have the greatest similarity to those of a horse in my opinion. So that this animal, altho' it is furnished with horns, by no means belongs to the ruminating tribe, but rather to that class whose fat is not hard like tallow, but of a soft nature like lard.

The stomach has not the smallest resemblance to that of a horse, but rather to that of a hog or a man. It was four feet long, (as I have lately discovered in my notes, since I described this animal in the Swedish Transactions) and two feet in diameter; and to this viscus an intestinal tube of twenty-eight feet in length, and six inches in diameter was annexed. This intestinal canal ended three feet and a half from the bottom by a large cœcum, if I may so call a viscus, which at its upper end was of the same width as the stomach, viz. two feet, and of above twice as long, that is, eight feet and a half, and lay on the spine of the back, being attached to it at both ends, after which it was contracted into a rectum six inches wide, and eighteen inches long.

The kidneys were a foot and a half in diameter, and the milt scarcely a foot in breadth, but full four feet in length. The heart was a foot and a half long, and the breadth not much less. The right lobe of the lungs had an incision in it, but was in other respects undivided and

entire, being two feet in length. The left was subdivided into two lobes, the smallest of which was next the base of the heart. The liver, when measured from right to left, was found to be three feet and a half in breadth; but in depth, or measuring from above downwards, as it hangs in the animal when it is in a standing position, two feet and a half. It consisted of three larger and perfectly distinct globes, almost of the same size, and of a small lobe besides, which projected to about a foot from the concave side of the liver, at the middle of its upper edge. No gall-bladder, nor any traces of it, was to be found. In this respect the rhinoceros resembles the horse.

Immediately before I finished the dissection of this animal, I opened its stomach, which was very much distended, in order to examine upon what it usually fed. The contents of the stomach were entirely free from smell, and perfectly sweet and fresh, consisting of roots and small branches of masticated trees, some of which were as big as the end of a man's finger. This animal, as it appeared, had likewise eaten a great quantity of succulent plants, among which I thought I distinguished two or three which were harsh and prickly. The whole of this mass diffused around a very strong and at the same time an aromatic smell, which in a great measure took off the stench arising from the putrid viscera. It might indeed be some particular herb, or, perhaps, the root only of an herb, with which I was entirely unacquainted, that produced the chief part of the aromatic flavour? In the excrements of this animal, which were four inches in diameter, and in other respects similar to those of a horse, though of a much drier nature, there is usually a quantity of bark and fibres of trees observed, a circumstance to which the hunters pay attention; and by this means are able to distinguish it from the dung of the hippopotamus, an animal which subsists wholly on grass. I thrust my hand into this animal's mouth, which was half open, and found the tongue to be perfectly soft, which is in direct opposition to the common idea, viz. *Quod lambendo trucidat*, (that he kills by licking with his tongue.) I was likewise not a little surprized to find no fore-teeth in any of the three carcases of the rhinoceroses, although one of these animals appeared to be aged; and,

and, indeed, there is little room for fore-teeth, as the mouth goes off so sharp at the fore part, that there it is only an inch and a half in breadth. Besides, it has no use for any teeth there, as the lips, like the skin, are so extremely hard, that it can clip off the tops of plants and shrubs with them: and that with so much the more ease, as the under jaw goes within the upper; so that this species of rhinoceros is probably capable of laying hold of its food with its lips, and conveying it into its mouth, with the same dexterity and ease as Dr PARSONS remarked on a similar occasion in the common rhinoceros.

I could not at this time possibly separate the flesh from the other bones, to examine them. I expected, however, that, when I returned, the eagles and wolves would have saved me that trouble. And, in fact, this was so far the case, that I had it in my power to carry home with me the cranium of the smallest rhinoceros, which I dissected, very nearly in a compleat state. It is from this skull that the annexed drawing was made; and this part of the creature is too important, to omit describing here.

When both the jaws are clapped together in their joint, they measure nineteen inches at the aggregate height in the back part; and, at the fore part from the tip of the nose, fifteen; the length, measured from the tip of the nose to the back part of the cranium, is in a direct line twenty-three inches, or somewhat short of two feet.

In order to avoid being prolix in my description, I refer my readers to the annexed figure in Plate III. of this Volume, from which they will be able readily to conceive the proportion, &c. of the other parts. It is on the fore part of the *os frontis* that the lesser horn is placed; it will, therefore, probably, be easily observed from the annexed drawing, that *sagittal future* is obliterated, and that the *os occipitis* is terminated by a flat surface, along which it goes strait down in a perpendicular line to the condyloid processes, one of which may be seen in the plate.

The cavity which contains the brain, does not extend much farther downward than the *ossa bregmatis*. The other bones by which it is encompassed are tolerably

thick, so that this large animal has but a small brain proportioned to its size; the cavity for containing this organ being barely six inches long, and four high, and of an oval shape. In order to know more certainly the capacity of it, we filled it with peas, which we afterwards measured, and found scarcely to amount to a quart. In order to discover the proportion between the brain of the rhinoceros and that of a man, I likewise filled a middle-sized human scull with peas, and found that nearly three pints were necessary for this purpose. On the contrary, the cavity of the nose in the rhinoceros is of a considerable size, which probably not a little contributes to the quickness of this animal's scent. At least, physiologists commonly explain the superiority of hounds in this particular, from the circumstance of the *tunica schneideriana* or the nervous membrane appropriated to this sense, being so extensive, (when expanded and extricated from the various folds which it makes in the cavity of the nose, with the greatest art planned for this purpose,) as to cover the whole body of the animal; while on the other hand, this membrane, is only capable of covering the head in the human species.

Six *dentes molares* only, or grinders as they are called, were observed on each side of both jaws, belonging to the two oldest of the rhinoceroses killed by us, and five only in the least or youngest, as the annexed drawing of its cranium demonstrates; yet far back in the mouth we discovered the marks of two more on each side, the foremost of which had begun to make its appearance, but the hindmost was almost wholly included in its socket. Hence it follows, that an aged and full grown rhinoceros has fourteen teeth in each jaw, in all twenty-eight.

In the anterior part of the *os palati*, this animal seems to have a tooth-like process, which is lost in the scull that I brought home. Considering the distance of it from the lower jaw, it should appear that it can scarcely serve any purposes of a tooth. I have to thank M. PALLAS for this piece of information; who, when I had transmitted to him this engraving, was so good as to send me the beautiful figures of the cranium of a rhinoceros, transmitted to him by M. CAMPER for the *Atta Petropolitana*.

The

The dotted lines drawn about the cranium, show pretty nearly the situation of the horns and lips.

As I have before mentioned that the rhinoceros may be killed by a single shot, it follows that the hide of this animal is not so impenetrable as has been supposed. BONTIUS has remarked long ago, that this creature is usually killed with powder and ball. M. DE BUFFON probably did not pay attention to this passage, when he asserted, on the authority of GERVAISE, that its hide cannot be penetrated by any ball, excepting only about the ears. To these, however, M. DE BUFFON appears, of his own free will and bounty, to have added the eyes and the belly. It is true, indeed, that leaden balls will sooner be flattened against the skin than pierce it; but that balls or cylinders made of iron (*des lingots de fer*) should not be able to make the least impression on it, appears to be another of M. DE BUFFON's additions, equally absurd with the former. It often becomes requisite for me to correct in this manner, the voluminous works of this illustrious author; which, indeed, merit this correction so much the more, as the errors in them, being in other respects frequently dressed up in an elegant style, have imposed on many with charms which ought to be the attendants only on pure genuine truth, and unadulterated nature. It is therefore probable, that M. DE BUFFON's sportive genius, must at times have operated in imposing also on its owner; but I am willing to hope, that this gentleman being *by profession* the interpreter of nature and truth, will on this account see with the greater pleasure, any strictures and remarks which are necessary to free natural knowledge from falsehood and error.

For this reason I shall proceed, without farther ceremony, to inform the reader, that the hide of the rhinoceros, as well as that of the elephant, is capable of being penetrated by darts and javelins. I bade one of my Hottentots make a trial of this with his hassagai, on one of the dead rhinoceroses. Though his weapon was not in good order, and had no other sharpness than what it had received from the forge, yet, by means of a certain manœuvre the fellow made use of, it received such an impulsive force, as at the distance of five or six paces,

to

to pierce through the thick hide of the animal half a foot deep into its body.

The Hottentot or Caffre hunters are accustomed to steal both upon the elephant and the rhinoceros while they are asleep, and wound them in different places at one and the same time. After this they follow the traces of the animal for one or two days, till it falls down with weakness or dies of its wounds. However, according to their own account, they generally poison one or two of their darts, immediately before they attack an animal of this size; in which case, they have no occasion to wait so many days, as they otherwise would, before their prey falls into their hands. A farmer told me, that he had seen an elephant wounded in this manner and dead within twenty-four hours.

With respect to the one-horned rhinoceros, M. DE BUFFON, in Tom. XL changes his opinion three times in the space of a few pages. In page 177, without quoting his authority for it, M. DE BUFFON considers the hide as being so tough, as not to be penetrated either by the fire-arms or side-arms of the hunter, (*ni du fer ni du feu du chasseur.*) In page 181 again in the notes, he quotes, approves, and highly commends the account given by M. Mours relative to this point, which yet is in contradiction with the former. This, however, he appears again to have forgot, when, in page 195, (without producing any authority for it) he assures us, that javelins (*les javalots & les lances*) are not able to pierce this animal's side.

Not content with asserting that the hide of the rhinoceros is impenetrable, M. DE BUFFON, in page 176, will not even allow it the smallest portion whatever of sensibility, (*prive de toute sensibilité*) and this without quoting any authority, or having any other foundation for the assertion, than merely what his own imagination has furnished him with. And yet, had M. DE BUFFON but paid a moderate degree of attention to the clear and distinct account drawn up by Dr PARSONS in the *Phil. Trans.* which he himself has quoted, it would seem that he must have been of a different opinion. In that paper it is said, that the rhinoceros emitted his penis, when he was tickled under the belly with a wisp of straw. M. DE BUF-

FOR too remarks himself, that the rhinoceros, like the hog, is fond of wallowing in the mire: but I will leave it for others to judge, how this agrees with the absolute insensibility he attributes to the hide. And, indeed, when even the thick hide of the elephant is affected by the stinging of flies, how can we suppose that of the rhinoceros to be absolutely insensible? In fact, the skin on the sole of a man's foot, though thicker than it is in other parts of the body, is notwithstanding by no means void of sensibility. Besides, the skin of the rhinoceros, however tough and close in its texture, has, (at least about the groin,) vessels, blood, and juices, adapted for the nourishment of insects, and which, indeed, actually do nourish them; this beast being infested with a kind of *acari*, which I have observed on its pubis and groin, and have drawn up an account of them, inserted in the VIIth Tome of *Memoires sur les Insectes*. Neither does the thickness of this animal's hide prevent it from perspiring.

This creature, soon becomes black when it is hard hunted, though at all other times it appears to be of a grey colour. This proceeds from the dust and dried mud sticking to the animal's skin, and moistened by sweat. This fact, besides that I have been assured of it by others, I think I once myself saw a manifest instance of, in the case of a rhinoceros, which was pursued by some other sportsmen, and very unexpectedly passed within the distance of forty or fifty paces of my waggon, and, luckily for me, without perceiving it, or doing it any damage. This beast was much darker coloured than any I ever saw, the number of which, however, in all, did not exceed eight.

From the figure of the rhinoceros referred to above, and from the description I have already given, it follows, that M. DE BUFFON, in his notes to page 186, accuses KOLBE, without any foundation, of having described the lesser horn as being placed in a strait line behind the other, and upon the animal's forehead. *It is impossible*, says he, *that the two horns should be placed so far from each other; for in the horns which are preserved in SIR HANS SLOANE'S museum, there is only the distance of three inches between the larger horn and the smaller.* Indeed, this eminent naturalist appears rather too hasty in the foregoing remark,

remark, and forgets that every animal's nose is placed near its forehead; so that while one horn is fixed on the rhinoceros's nose, the other may be very well fixed, and actually is so, on the forehead. A figure so plain and simple as KOLBE's (vide the French edition) might have been sufficient to prevent mistakes on this subject.

In fine, it is necessary to inform my readers, that what M. DE BUFFON advances concerning the copulation of the one-horned rhinoceros, viz. that it is performed *croupe à croupe*, is not at all applicable to the rhinoceros bicornis; but in all probability, this opinion is not true with respect to either species, as in the two-horned rhinoceroses which I examined, the penis was placed as forward under the belly as it is in a horse; though, in proportion to the different bulk of the two animals, it is much shorter. In the animal which I dissected it was no more than seven or eight inches long, as may be seen in the specimen I brought home with me. In a rhinoceros, which seemed to be old, it was not much larger. M. DE BUFFON, after Dr PARSONS, describes the penis in the one horned species as being still shorter. Besides, he does not say a word concerning the situation of this member, but founds his conjecture on the subject of this animal's copulation, merely on the circumstance of its having been noticed to bend its penis backwards when it staled, in which direction consequently the urine was emitted. But this, perhaps, was owing to an accidental and vicious conformation; or it might be done out of cleanliness, more especially as we know that the *rhinoceros bicornis* at least has a very acute smell, and appears to love cleanliness, from the circumstance of its chusing certain places near the bushes to stale upon. Indeed, it is possible, that the animal may have a kind of *musculus erector*, for the purpose of occasionally altering the direction of this member. But I am afraid of wearing out my reader's patience, by dwelling so long on the subject of this quadruped; I shall therefore at present only mention it, just as it may happen to occur in the course of my journal.

Mr IMMELMAN also was at length weary of standing by and seeing me dissect this beast, and therefore set out before us on his way home, with a view to repose at intervals, and cool himself under some shady tree. In order

der to go, as it appeared to him, by a nearer way, he rode over a hill overgrown with bushes. From this spot a rhinoceros rushed out upon him, and he certainly would have been trampled to death by this huge creature, or else have been taken up by it on its horns, and, together with his horse, thrown up into the air, had not this latter in his fright made a sudden start, and by several side leaps carried his rider through the bushes, out of the sight and scent of the animal.

It must here be noticed, that the rhinoceros's eyes are sunk in its head, and are but small when compared to the size of its body; in consequence of which it sees, as it is said, but indistinctly, and that only strait forewards. But to make up for this deficiency in sight, its organs of smelling and hearing are so much the more acute; therefore, at the least noise more than usual, this creature takes the alarm, and pricking up its ears, stands clapping with them and listening. Above all things one must be careful even when at a great distance, not to get to the windward of it; for in that case, it seldom fails directly to follow the scent, and attack the object, as it was very near doing by Mr IMMELMAN. This gentleman, having with much difficulty made his escape, struck into a bye-path, in order, after passing through a little dale, to get into the strait and plain road. Here he overtook me, on a spot whither I had retired to screen myself and my horse from the burning rays of the sun, and was turning over my drawings and memorandums. He was still somewhat out of breath in consequence of his adventure, at the time he gave me an account of it; while I, for my part, could not avoid in some degree envying his good fortune, in having at so cheap a rate seen this huge unwieldy animal alive, together with the motions it made in the cumbersome hide in which it was incased: but, indeed, he himself had seen so little of it, that we soon determined to ride up together on the other side of the very hill, in which he had just been put to flight by the rhinoceros. From hence we expected we should be able to descry this creature on the plain; but that we might not be betrayed by the effluvia of our bodies, in case he should return again to the thicket, we threw some dust into the air, in order to determine more
certainly

certainly which way the wind blew, and thus be able to direct our course precisely in opposition to it. And indeed, we had not been long arrived at the spot before my horse began to be a little shy, and at length was quite restive, behaving just as he had done before when I first rode him up to the carcases of the two rhinoceroses. This circumstance I observed to my companion, considering it as a sign that in all probability, there was a rhinoceros near the spot; but he went on, saying, it was impossible, as it did not strike him just then, that there might be more than one in that vicinity. We therefore advanced still nearer, till being but fifteen paces off, I heard a rustling noise like that of an animal raising itself up leisurely on its legs. Immediately upon this a rhinoceros appeared, with its horn projecting over one of the bushes. I now thought it full time for us to turn back immediately, and made signs to my companion, that it might be done as quietly as possible. He too had perceived the snout of this animal, and we rode away as softly as possible; our horses' feet, notwithstanding, made a crackling noise among the dry branches which had fallen from the trees, and with which the narrow paths between the bushes were every where covered. On this account, we did not forget during our retreat to look behind us, in order that we might make off as fast as possible, in case the rhinoceros should have been alarmed by the noise, and have been induced to pursue us. What I call paths were merely tracts made by the buffalos and rhinoceroses forcing their way through the thickets; but among these also we found many blind paths, i. e. such as terminated on a sudden in some high and impenetrable bush. Into a place of this kind we might in our flight easily have strayed, and there have been caught by the rhinoceros, as it were, in a trap. This adventure made us afterwards suspect, that every bush harboured a rhinoceros; and induced us for some time to give up all thoughts of reconnoitring among the bushes with so much confidence, an animal that did not seem as if it was to be trifled with.

From the preceding relation, I think we may infer, that this rhinoceros was different from that which put Mr IMMELMAN to flight; as also, that this latter did not pursue

pursue us, by reason that, in consequence of our having rode up to it full in the face of the wind, it could not get scent of us; besides, this animal did not hear our talking nor the crackling of the branches, with a sufficient degree of certainty to engage it to make an attack upon us: and in fine, it appears, that it had with great forecast chosen a thick and high bush, by way of entrenchment, on that side of the bush, from whence the wind prevented it from getting scent of any thing. If I may draw any conclusion from my horse's stopping, it would appear, that he had got scent of this beast as far off as the distance of forty or fifty paces, though the wind was very moderate from that quarter.

On our way home, (for so we always called our waggon, or baiting-place in the desert) we came within pistol-shot of a herd of *elk-antelopes*, probably the same with those we had given chase to in the morning without success; but what was very singular, they at this time scarcely shewed the smallest fear. The males, which were of the size of an ordinary galloway, appeared much more bulky and corpulent than their females, and appeared to run rather heavily.

We received an unexpected visit in the evening. This was from eight colonists, who were come hither from *Camdebo* with four waggons, and had brought with them two of their wives, and two children. They were going to the salt-pit before-mentioned near *Zwartkops*-river, in order to fetch salt from thence; but having been informed by us of the violent drought they would meet with in their way thither, part of them only went with two waggons, that being fewer of them, they might be less liable to suffer for want of water. These people told us, that they had chanced to awake a rhinoceros that very day, just by the road side; but that the beast probably scared by the noise and bustle it had heard from different quarters at once, ran by them without doing them any hurt. They related to me, however, an instance, in which a rhinoceros had run up to a waggon, and carried it to a considerable distance on his snout and horns. They also informed us, that the distemper among the horses had already begun to commit ravages in the district of *Camdebo*, where, however, it otherwise seldom used to make

its appearance till the month of April. The universal drought that prevailed this year, was probably the reason of this.

C H A P. XIII.

Journey from Quammedacka to Agter Bruntjes Hoogte.

WE left the pool at *Quammedacka*, which we had by this time drank dry, at nine o'clock in the morning of the 21st of December, and arrived at noon at Little *Visch-rivier*, where we again pitched our tents. We found here a herd of spring-boks, two of which we shot. At five this morning the thermometer was at 52 degrees, at twelve at 82, and at half past three at 95 degrees. The evening was very much overcast. There was a great drought in this tract of country, on both sides of the river, but still greater farther on towards the north, where the soil was more gravelly, and produced a greater number of succulent plants. In the spaces between these, besides shrubs and bushes, there was sometimes to be found a little dry grass; every where else, the ground was as dry and bare as a high road, with a clayey bottom. Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, we heard the roaring of a lion; and though it only roared twice, the animals we had with us were very restless throughout the whole night.

Early in the morning of the 22d, we crossed little *Visch-rivier*, it being supposed, that where we then were, it would not be so well worth our while to go in search of the *hippopotamus*, or sea-cow, an animal that is larger than a rhinoceros, and lives both in the water and on land, (vid. Plate IV. of this volume.) This, indeed, as I had seen the rhinoceros, was what I now chiefly laid out for.

Being on our march, between nine and ten o'clock, we saw two large lions. They were about three hundred paces distant, in a little valley. The moment they observed

observed us, they betook themselves to flight. Having a great desire to get a nearer view of these animals, we rode in pursuit of them, all the while shouting and calling out after them. Upon this they mended their pace till they got down to the side of the river, which we had just crossed, and there hid themselves in the thickets. Incited by their curiosity, two of our hottentots followed us, one armed with a couple of hassagais, and the other with a gun. We ourselves had no arms, whatever; but I suppose we ran no risk in this chase, as we could easily have turned back and fetched our arms, in case the lions had thought proper to pursue us. In running they had a kind of sideling pace, like that of a dog, now and then taking a slight bound. Their necks were all the time somewhat raised, and they appeared to look askance at us over their shoulders. One of them had a mane, and consequently was a male; but both of them were nearly of a size, and appeared to be considerably longer and higher than our saddle-horses, which were of the size of common galloways. Neither our horses, nor several gazels which were on the spot, appeared in the least afraid of these lions, though they were as near them as we were. As the lion seldom or never attacks his prey openly, it appears that he does not strike the other animals with any great degree of terror, except when they take the scent of him, which nature has rendered highly disgustful to them.

This day also we scared a male ostrich away from its nest, which was in the middle of the plains. This nest, however, consisted of nothing but the bare ground on which the eggs lay scattered. Hence it appears, that the ostrich does not leave its eggs to be hatched by the sun, but, at least in this part of Africa, sits upon them herself: we may also infer, that the male and the female sit upon them alternately. The Hottentots also assured me of this fact, which has hitherto been unknown to naturalists.

So that **TREVENOT** is in the right when he asserts, that the ostrich lives in monogamy, or with one female; though he is quite alone in this assertion, and the practice is contrary to the custom of the larger kind of birds.

I do not pretend to be able at all to determine the exact number of eggs laid by this bird; the number of those we found at this time was only eleven; they were all fresh, and probably were to have had several more added to them. Another time two of my Hottentots scared another ostrich away from its nest, out of which they took fourteen eggs, and brought them to me, having left some behind, which they did not think were quite so fresh; so that perhaps sixteen, eighteen, or twenty, is the highest amount of the number of eggs laid by this bird: and yet it seems to me, that it must be very difficult for the ostrich to cover so many with its body. A brood of young ones, barely two feet high, which I saw in the district of *Roodt-Zand*, seemed to me to amount to some such number; but the ostrich-chicks which I had caught on the 16th of this month at Kurekoi-ku, were about a foot high. May we not likewise from hence conclude, that African ostriches have no fixed times for laying their eggs?

Some of my more discerning readers may, perhaps, be surprised that I should be able to assure them, that it was a male ostrich which I frightened away from the nest. To this I reply, that in all this part of Africa it is considered as an undoubted fact, that such of these birds as are males, have white feathers in their tails and wings, while their backs and bellies are covered with black. The females, on the other hand, have black feathers in their tails and wings only, while those upon their bodies are of an ash-colour. This likewise agrees with the dissections which have been made of this bird in Europe, (*Vide Buffon*, p. 429.) What tends farther to convince me, that the cock ostrich assists the hen in hatching her eggs, is, that in the nest which I have been just mentioning, several white feathers were found, as well as a number of black ones, both of which would naturally fall into it whilst the birds were hatching. Nature, perhaps, has found it the more needful to impose on both sexes of the ostrich, the office of mutually assisting each other in hatching their eggs, as the frame of their bodies is large, and they are furnished with many stomachs, which at the same time are craving beyond many others of the feathered race; so that the hens could not support the

the usual course of fasting during the whole time of sitting, by any means so well as the females of other birds. Those authors who have described the chicks of the ostrich, as covered with small grey feathers, are perfectly in the right. Even their necks and thighs are clothed with a plumage of this colour, parts, which in the birds of full size, are destined to be naked, while the rest of their bodies are ornamented with feathers. The most beautiful and curled of these feathers are in the tail of the ostrich, and consequently it is chiefly for the purpose of adorning our heads with them, that we deprive this bird of its life or freedom.

In this colony, I did not however see ostrich feathers made any other use of, than to brush away the flies; for which purpose, they had whisks made of them of a considerable length as well as breadth, with which a slave or two were occupied in driving away these animals from the table, while the family were at meat. The Hottentots, who eat all kinds of flesh, eat that of the ostrich also; but the eggs I have seen used for pancakes and aumelets by the colonists, and that even at the Cape. As we were travelling through the desert, we found it answer best to moisten our throats with them just before we took our chocolate or tea; and likewise to clarify our coffee with them, or else to stew them, for want of pans, in our porridge-pot, having previously thrown a little fat into it; a dish which I had learnt to prepare in Sweden under the name of poached eggs.

The eggs of ostriches are eatable, indeed, in all these ways, but are inferior to hens' eggs. They are, as it were, of a coarser nature and thicker consistence, and at same time more luscious and filling. One of the largest shells of the ostriches eggs, preserved in the cabinet of the Royal Academy, I found, on examination, weighed eleven ounces, and to be six inches and a half in depth, and to contain five pints and a quarter liquid measure. It is of the same shape with a common egg. I never found the weight of the fresh eggs to exceed this in any remarkable proportion; so that when M. DE BUFFON (at p. 426, 427) computes the weight of one of these eggs at fifteen pounds, his bold assertion needs only to be mentioned, in order to be confuted.—I have already, in

Vol. I. page 91, related the method of hunting the ostriches in this country; but that this bird is satisfied with barely hiding its head, when it finds it cannot make its escape, is a circumstance which I do not recollect to have ever heard mentioned at the Cape; but even were it a fact, still PLINY's explication of it is not more ridiculous than M. DE BUFFON's himself, l. c. page 448. Children, indeed, who play at hide and seek, are ready to imagine that they are concealed, when they cover their heads, so that they themselves cannot see. I have likewise often observed turkey-poults barely hide their heads, so as not to be able to see any thing, when their mother's cries warned them of the hawk's approach. How then can a greater degree of consideration be effected in a bird, in other respects very stupid, when its life is in danger?

M. DE BUFFON, page 443. l. c. says that the skin of this creature is very thick; but in this respect it is at the best not thicker than the goat's or calf's-skin; so that how far it is probable that the Arabians make use of it for harnesses and shields (l. c. page 443.) does not appear to merit a serious enquiry.

The ostrich's cry agreeable to the description given me of it in Africa, resembles in some respects the roaring of the lion, but is shorter, or, rather not drawn out to so great a length. In this case, its cry must of necessity be hoarse and rough, and fill the breast of the hearer with anxiety and terror also; and consequently it is compared with much propriety by the prophet MICAH, chap. i. v. 8. to the voice of a mourner; if, indeed, by the word *uoche* in this and other places of scripture, the ostrich be meant, and not a species of owl.

The young ones have no cry at all; at least one of them, which on my return homewards I brought with me alive to the Cape all the way from *Honing-klop*, which was a foot and a half high, did not, during the whole time, viz. twenty-four days, let us hear any thing of it. It was trampled to death by my horse, immediately before I left the Cape, otherwise it might have easily been brought to Europe. It ate a great quantity, and was not nice in its food.

Several large tame ostriches were in the governor's menagerie at the Cape. Without appearing to be im-

ded by their weight, they would run along with any person whatsoever, and would likewise jump up and perch upon the shoulders of any that would suffer it. In consequence of having myself made this observation, as well as of similar instances to be found in authors, I have no doubt, but that ostriches might be brought to bear burdens, and do other services of that kind, so as to become of utility to mankind.

The instance which ADANSON gives us of a young ostrich, not properly trained up to this employment, does not suggest to me the same doubts as M. DE BUFFON entertains on this head. And yet we read in this illustrious author, l. c. that FRAMUS, who reigned in Egypt in the third century, was drawn by ostriches; and that in *Joar*, in Africa, an Englishman was seen riding on an ostrich, on which he was in the practice of taking journeys, &c. I have conversed with yeomen at the Cape, who had so tamed ostriches, that they went loose about their farms, and were obliged to seek their own food; but at the same time were so voracious as to swallow whole chickens, and trample hens to death, in order to tear them to pieces afterwards and eat them up. At a certain farm they were forced to kill one of these ostriches, because he had got a custom of trampling sheep to death. *Quere*, Does not the ostrich eat snakes also?

These large birds were, as it seemed to me, to be principally found in such tracts of country as partook of the properties of the *carrow*, and produced succulent plants. I saw only one of them in the *four* district, as they call it, of *Lange Kloof*; but this might very probably, (like the elephant in that same district, of which I have already given an account, Vol. I. page 224,) have got out of its latitude.

Another sort of large bird, which I have mentioned before, as being in the governor's menagerie, viz. the *casuary*, was not a native of Africa.

It had been a very hot day, and although it might seem that I might by this time have been inured to heat, yet by reason of it, I was seized with a violent head-ach. I found great relief notwithstanding, by washing my head in running water in great *Vish-rivier*. Two of my Hottentots complained also of being affected in the same manner,

manner, but were soon eased by giving them a little hemp to smoke. I had neglected to look at the thermometer this day till ten o'clock in the evening. Even at that late hour it was 78. When dark a few drops of rain fell. This night we did not hear the lions roar at all.

Very early on the 23d of December, we again proceeded on our journey, to search for the *sea-cow* near some other pit belonging to great *Visch-rivier*. We now again experienced a great scarcity of meat in the wagon; on which account my Hottentots began to grumble, and reminded me, that we ought not to spend so much of our time in going out in search of insects and plants, but give a better look out after game. At the same time they pointed to a neighbouring valley overrun with wood, at the upper edge of which, and at the distance of a mile and a quarter from the spot where we then were, they had observed several buffalos. We went thither accordingly, but though our fatigue was lessened by our Hottentots carrying our guns for us up a hill, yet we were quite breathless and overcome by the heat of the sun, before we reached the spot. Yet, what even at this moment appears to me a matter of wonder is, that so soon as we had got a glimpse of the game, all this languor left us in an instant. In fact, we each of us strove to fire before his neighbour, so that we appeared entirely to have lost sight of all prudence and caution. When we had advanced to within twenty or thirty paces of the animal, and consequently our fears might also have contributed somewhat to the hurry and confusion we were in, we discharged our pieces both almost at the same time; at which instant the buffalo, which was upon rather lower ground than we were, behind a thin scrambling bush, appeared to turn his head round in order to make towards us. The moment, however, we had discharged our guns, we had the pleasure to see him fall, and directly afterwards run down into the thickest part of the wood. Induced from this to hope, that our shot had proved mortal, we had the imprudence to follow him down into the close thickets, where, fortunately for us, we could get no farther. We had, however, as we found afterwards, only hit the hindmost part of the chine, where

where the balls, which lay at the distance of three inches from each other, had been shivered to pieces against the bones. In the mean time our temerity, which proceeded principally from hurry and ignorance, was looked upon by the Hottentots as a proof of spirit and intrepidity hardly to be equalled; on which account, from that instant, they always seemed to entertain an infinitely higher opinion of our courage than they had ever done before. Several of our Hottentots now came to us, and threw stones down into the dale, in order to discover by the bellowings of the beast, whither he had retired, but without success: afterwards, however, he appeared to have recovered his courage, for at last he came up out of the dale of his own accord to the skirts of the wood, and placed himself so as to have a full view of us on the spot, where we were resting ourselves somewhat higher up: his intention, in all probability, and in the opinion of our old sportsmen, being to revenge himself on us, if we had not happened to see him in time, and fired at him directly. What, perhaps, in some degree, put a stop to his boldness was, that we stood on higher ground than he did: for several veteran sportsmen have assured me of it as a fact, that they know from experience, that the buffalos do not willingly venture to ascend any hill or eminence in order to attack any one. The third shot, which we afterwards discovered to have entered at the belly, was fatal. This forced the buffalo to descend again into the vale, dying the ground and bushes all the way he went, with his blood. Though still hot upon the chase, yet we advanced with the greatest caution, accompanied by two of our Hottentots, through the thin and more pervious part of the wood, where the buffalo had taken refuge. He, on the other hand, was advancing again in order to attack some of us, when Mr IMMELMAN, from the place where he was posted, shot him in the lungs. Nevertheless, he had still strength enough left to make a circuit of a hundred and fifty paces before we heard him fall. During his fall, and before he died, he bellowed in a most stupendous manner; and this death-song of his filled us all with no small degree of joy, on account of the victory we had gained: and, so thoroughly steeled frequently is the human heart against the sufferings

ferings of the brute creation, that we hastened forwards, in order to have the pleasure of seeing the buffalo struggle with the pangs of death. I chanced to be first at the spot; but think it impossible ever to behold anguish, accompanied by a savage fierceness, painted in stronger colours than they were in the countenance of this buffalo. I was within ten steps of him, when he perceived me, and, bellowing, raised himself suddenly again on his legs. I had since reason to believe, that I was at the time very much frightened; for, 'ere I could well take my aim, I fired off my gun, and the shot missed the whole of his huge body, and only hit him in the hind legs, as we afterwards discovered by the size of the ball. Immediately upon this I ran away like lightning, in order to look out for some tree to climb up into.

Notwithstanding the tedious prolixity it may have occasioned me to be guilty of, I thought the best and readiest method of giving my reader an idea of the nature and disposition of this animal, and of the method of hunting it, as well as of other circumstances relative to this creature, would be to adduce an instance or two of what happened in the course of our adventures with it.

My Hottentots cut up the buffalo with their usual alacrity and ardour; but as they had a great way to carry the flesh to the waggon, they took it thither in a manner, which, I believe, will be thought rather uncommon. This was as follows: they cut out large slips of flesh whole and entire, with holes in the middle, wide enough to admit their heads and arms, and thus loaded themselves with it before, behind, and on every side of them; the meat all the while dangling about their bodies in a manner ludicrous enough, though not much suited to create an appetite in the spectator. In this way, their hands being entirely disengaged, excepting that each man carried a stick, they clambered up the brow of the hill that overhung the vale, and thus walked on towards the waggon, whither one might trace them all the way by the blood.

In the mean time the Hottentot, who was our principal shot, had, at no great distance from this place, shot an *elk-antelope*, in consequence of which we repaired thither, in order to carry off the best and fattest part of the flesh.

flesh. Before we got back to the waggon, we were overtaken by darkness, thunder and lightning; and, to add to the horror of the scene, we heard the lions roaring very loud. Indeed we had good reason to fear, that these wild beasts would throw themselves in our way, in order to share our prey with us. Neither should we, indeed, in the total darkness in which we were involved, have easily found our way back to the waggon, if the Hottentots whom we had left with it, had not been thoughtful and considerate enough to smack the large ox-whip from time to time by way of signal. At length, when we arrived at the plain where the waggon stood, we saw the fire they had made. We had hardly reached home, however, before there came on a heavy shower of rain, which continued the greatest part of the night, and put out our fire; the tilt of our waggon too, was in great danger of being carried away by a violent south-east wind, with which the rain was accompanied; at the same time the rain not only entered the waggon by the sides of the tilt, but also penetrated through the tilt-cloth, so that we were no better sheltered there, than the Hottentots under their cloaks. During all this, we often heard the roaring of the lions, as well as the yelling of the hyænas; and some of the latter animals stole away a strap belonging to the tackling of our waggon, together with a considerable quantity of the flesh which the Hottentots had hung up at the distance of a few paces from the spot where they lay.

This day the thermometer at five in the morning was at 74 degrees, at twelve at noon it rose to 99, and in the afternoon to 100.

On the 24th I was induced to stay a little longer on this spot, by the hopes of shooting a *gnu*, which had been seen ranging by itself about this part of the country.

T'Gnu is the Hottentot name for a singular animal, which as to its form, is between the horse and the ox. It is about the size of a common galloway, its length is somewhat more than five, and its height rather more than four feet. The proportion of the parts to each other, may be best seen by the figure given in Plate II. of this Volume, which represents this animal in the attitude into which

which it puts itself when about to butt any one; in consequence of which, I have been able to give a proper idea of the position of the horns, and the manner in which they lay, as it were, flat upon the head: while, on the contrary, in a drawing which accompanies Professor ALLAMAND's fine description of this creature, and which has been copied in a compilation, entitled, "*Nouvelle Description du Cap de B. Esperance*," the horns seem almost to grow out of the mane itself.

The colour of this animal is a dark-brown all over, excepting the tail and mane, which are of a light-grey; the shag on the chin, under the lower jaw, and on the breast is black, as also are the stiff hairs which stand up erect on the forehead and upper part of the face. It is somewhat singular, that M. ALLAMAND, who was the first that described this species of animal from one which was brought from the Cape to Holland, found the colour of its mane and body extremely different from what I have above described it to be, and from what I have observed in Africa, as indeed may be seen by the skin of this animal which I brought home with me. Probably this difference proceeds from a diversity of age, climate, or other accidental circumstances.

At first sight one would be apt to pronounce, that the *gnu* resembles the ox kind most; but as to the following particulars, this beast may also be referred to the *capra* in general, or to the genus which the great Zoologist, M. PALLAS, has separated from them under the denomination of *antelopes*.

1. The legs of the *gnu* are as small as those of the antelope, or the gazel kind; and, like them, have small fetlock-bones and hoofs.

2. The *gnu*, in its hair, resembles the antelopes and *capra*, inasmuch as this is short, just as it is in the hart kind. In its shag, the *gnu* resembles the *capra* more than oxen. As to its mane, it is obviously distinct from these latter animals; but somewhat resembles another large *capra*, or antelope (the *antilope oryx*) by the colonists called the *Cape-elk*, (vide Plate I. of this Volume.) As to the tail, it does not resemble an ox's tail in the smallest degree, but rather that of a horse; and in this point somewhat coincides with another large antelope, viz. the *hartbeest*,

hartbeest, (vide Plate I. of this Volume.) This last-mentioned antelope, according to the accounts given me by several persons at the Cape, falls upon its knees when it is going to butt any one; and probably the gnu resembles it in this point also, as M. ALLAMAND remarked of the gnu which was brought to Holland, that it now and then fell on its knees, and butted against the ground.

3. Like many of the hart and antelope kind, the gnu, has a visible *sinus*, or *porus sebaceus*, or *ceriferus*, below and just before each eye. This sinus, which has not been taken notice of by M. ALLAMAND, is (just as in the hartbeest,) about one line in diameter, and encompassed with a little tuft of black hair. Pores of this kind, or apertures in the skin, which excrete a substance of the nature of ear-wax, are not to be found, as far as I have been able to understand, in any species of the ox kind.

4. The noise made by the tame fawn of a gnu, which I have often heard cry, had no resemblance to the bleating of the common calf.

5. The flesh of this animal did not appear to me to have any thing of the flavour of beef or of buffalo's flesh, but was rather like that of the other antelopes or gazels about the Cape; it however, had a finer grain, and was more juicy than the flesh of the hartbeest, and of course much more delicate than beef.

6. From the dissection I made of a fawn of a gnu, I find that its viscera resemble those of the other antelopes which I had examined, more than the viscera of the ox, but that they bear no resemblance whatever to those of the horse: so that this circumstance is sufficient entirely to overthrow the conjecture, of those who imagine, that the gnu is produced by the copulation of a horse with a cow.

What makes it still less credible, that the gnu should be the offspring of such an intermixture as I have mentioned, is, that these animals are almost always seen in large herds, and, as far as I can understand, are in Africa to be found only in *Camdebo* and *Agter Bruntyes-hoogte*; from whence it is only a few years since, one of them was carried to the Cape, and from thence to Holland: consequently, the gnu then wandering in these parts was, probably, an old buck, which either did not

care to keep company any longer with the herd it belonged to, or else had been accidentally separated from it.

A gnu that was seen here kept upon the open plains, and we could not steal upon it by creeping towards it from among the bushes, I endeavoured to overtake it on horseback. And indeed, at first I got almost within gun-shot of it, when it shewed its vicious disposition in making various curvets and plunges, flinging out behind with one or both legs, and butting against the mole-hills with its horns; but immediately upon this, it fled with considerable velocity in a direct line over the plain as far as the eye could discern it: and I cannot help thinking, but that this was one that was become furious, as the other gnus I have chased since would now and then stop to look back at their pursuers, as soon as they had gained ground of them in any considerable degree. What contributed not a little to this gnu's having escaped from me was, that the ground was rocky, and that an ardent desire for dissecting this animal induced me to push my horse on too fast at first; so that in a very little time he was quite out of breath, and all over in a tremor.

A great number of eagles and other birds of prey that feed upon carcases, were feasting on and fighting for the elk-antelope we had shot the preceding day, and had already consumed almost all the flesh we had left behind us. I also frightened away a jackal from the carcase. I could not at this time pretend to pursue it, as my horse had not recovered the fatigue of pursuing the *gnu*. This day we saw a numerous herd of *quaggas* also, which frequently made their appearance in these deserts. Hardly a day passed without our seeing a great number of *bart-beests* between the two *Visch-rivers*, and *spring-boks* by hundreds and thousands at once.

This was now the 24th of December, a period which Christians all over the globe commonly spend in mirth and festivity*. My friend and I, though amidst a desert, and at a distance from the rest of mankind, were desirous of celebrating this religious jubilee; we therefore overhauled our stock of biscuit, and found that on occasion of this great holiday, we could afford two to each man. As to the rest of our fare, we regaled ourselves

* This is the case in Sweden particularly.

Selves with an ostrich-egg, part of which was stewed in our porridge-pot, and the remainder boiled up with some coffee, and a small bason full of it was given to every one of our company. The third dish consisted of a piece of elk's flesh. This day at noon the thermometer stood at 84, but towards evening fell to 76.—At night our Hottentots fastened a piece of meat to a long stout strap in such a way, that if the wolf should come and attempt to swallow the meat, he would be caught fast by the strap till they could lay hold of him and kill him; but the beast was not at that time in this part of the country, and consequently we could not discover how far this new scheme of theirs was practicable.

The thermometer rose on the 25th to 100 degrees. We now repaired to a *sea-cow* hole, (*Zeekot-gat*) near *Visch-rivier*, to look for the *hippopotamus*.

The wind blew agreeably cool on the 26th, and the thermometer at noon was not higher than 79. We this day overtook several farmers from *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, who were come into this neighbourhood in order to hunt. I could not avoid smiling, (though at the same time I was overwhelmed with confusion,) while these good rustics viewed us narrowly from head to foot; and, on the contrary, I could not but allow their as well as our surprise at this unexpected visit, to be very natural. Indeed, they found me with a beard which had not been shaved since the end of the preceding month, without a stock, and my waistcoat open at the breast, my hat flapped, my hair braided into a twist, my side-curls hanging down strait and fluttering in the air; a fine thin linen coat, with a white ground variegated with blood, spots of gun-powder, and daubed with dirt and grease of all kinds; but at the same time ornamented with gilded buttons, a third part of which were fallen off, and a great many of the remainder dangled about loose, just about to follow their companions. With regard to the other parts of my dress, my breeches, for the sake of coolness, were turned up at the knees, in the manner in which they are sometimes worn by the boors of this country; and after the same guise, and for a like reason my stockings, which were woollen, were gartered under my knees, and at the same time hung loose down

about my ankles; while my feet were ornamented with Hottentot shoes, made to draw up with strings, of the same kind with those delineated in Plate I. Vol. I. Fig. 4.

Mr IMMELMAN, who was indeed, a handsome young man, with large dark eye-brows and a fine head of hair, had at this time a beard of five weeks growth, which was now beginning to curl in a very conspicuous manner. As to the rest of his appearance, he figured on horseback in a long night-gown, with a white night-cap, large wide boots, and, if I remember well, was at that time without stockings, in order to keep his legs the cooler. It may perhaps here be necessary, to make some apology both for our beards and our dress. With regard to our beards, we had both of us in a merry fit resolved not to touch a hair of them either with razors or scissars, till we should either get into company again with the Christian lasses, or should have an opportunity of dissecting a hippopotamus. Added to this, we were anxious to try how a long beard would suit our juvenile years. "It is a compliment bequeathed us by nature, said we to each other, let us retain it by way of experiment. This ornamental excrescence may perhaps prevent cold, eruptions in the face, and the tooth-ache in cold nights; at least it is not improbable, that it serves in this climate to defend the face from the scorching rays of the sun; and who can say, what respect and consideration it may procure us from the beardless tribes we may probably meet with during our expedition." This resolution, which we strictly adhered to, in the mean while occasioned many ludicrous conversations; though at the same time I must own, that when we got rid of our beards, we felt ourselves delivered from a very heavy burden. Again, as to our dress, it was entirely fitted to the warmth of the climate and our own convenience; neither was there any danger of lessening our consequence in the eyes of our own Hottentots, or of those we might happen to meet with in the desert. As for my woollen stockings, I wore them chiefly in order to keep off the flies, and at the same time to preserve my legs from the bites of serpents, and from being torn by the branches of trees. Mr IMMELMAN thought that boots were more convenient for this purpose. As he was an African

African born, he was not afraid of being sun-burned; on which account also, in order to keep his hair out of his eyes, he generally rode with his night-cap on his head.

At seven in the morning on the 27th of December, the thermometer was at 60 degrees, the preceding night having appeared to us extremely cool. The thermometer at noon was at 95. At five in the afternoon it had fallen to 83, when a shower of rain fell, accompanied with thunder and lightning. At nine in the evening the thermometer stood at 79 degrees.

We forded over Great *Visch-rivier* on the 29th, and examined several sea-cow skulls which lay on the other side of it, and found them perfectly answerable to the description and drawing given of these parts by M. DE BUFFON.

I began now to feel some inconvenience from a slight pain and swelling in the fore part of the breast, just at the edge of the sternum, which gave me much uneasiness; but it wore away in the space of a few days, and was probably only a fore-runner of the gout, the symptoms of which had already begun to appear in a slight pain and sensation of burning in the soles of my feet. This disorder, which fell peculiarly heavy on a botanist, and a person travelling through extensive deserts, I had in all probability brought upon myself, by having undergone too great fatigue. At least one of our horses was seized, owing to this very cause, with a kind of gout or tenderness in the feet, accompanied with a swelling in the pastern-joints, as soon as it got home to the Cape. The day before we had eaten our last biscuit, our patience, in waiting so long to see the *hippopotamus*, was almost as near a close as our biscuit; we, therefore, the next day resolved to go again into a land inhabited by Christians.

On the 29th our Boshies-men conducted us from Great to Little *Visch-rivier*. This district of country was thinly overspread with thorn-trees (*mimosa nilotica*,) which shaded the ground and kept it cool; so that being in some measure covered with grass, it presented an agreeable verdure, and at the same time harboured a considerable number of *springers*, *quaggas*, and *haribeefts*, of which last

we shot a young female. The muscles and fibres of this animal retained a convulsive motion and trembling, even for several minutes after the animal had been cut in pieces. I must own, that I never, either before or since, have observed any thing similar to this, either in the hartbeest, or any other kind of animal.

C H A P. XIV.

Residence at Agter Bruntjes-Hoogte.

OUR first lodging was at an old elephant hunter's, called *PRINTSLOO*, who was the first that had migrated here, and at the foot of a high mountain made choice of the finest situation for a farm in the whole district, and, I had nearly said, in all Africa. The thermometer during the whole day, stood about 60 degrees.

On the 30th, the thermometer, within doors, at seven in the morning, was at 60 degrees, and in the evening at 67.

The 31st, or New Year's Eve, which fell upon a Sunday, we celebrated with a psalm or two, and after that with a game at cards. They assured me, that the winter months of July and August were colder at this place than at the Cape; so that the snow lay on the ground for two days together, about two inches deep; but that their sheep and cattle then, as well at other times, were kept out of doors in the open air, and in the day-time were driven abroad to go in search of their own food.

January, 1776. We were now arrived at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, which is rather a flat piece of country, and takes in the upper part of *Kleine Visch-rivier*, and is separated from *Camdebo* by *Bruntjes-hoogtens*, or the Bruntjes-hills, and as to the latter place (*Camdebo*) is situated *agter*, or behind them. The *Snecuwbergen*, which lie to the north of *Camdebo*, are so named from the snow with which the highest of them are said to be covered in the winter time, and which remains so during part of the summer; so that, probably,

probably, they are of the same nature as the *Rogge-veld* and *Bokke-veld* mountains, and perhaps compose a part of the chain formed by them. The lower *Sneeuwbergen*, or Snow-mountains, are inhabited throughout the year; but on the higher range of hills the winters are severe enough to make the colonists remove into plains below in Camdebo. It is indeed said, that the inhabitants of the more distant *Sneeuw*-mountains are sometimes forced, entirely to relinquish their dwellings and habitations, on account of the savage plundering race of Boshies-men, of which I have taken some notice before, (in Vol. I. p. 140) who from their hiding-places, aiming their poisoned arrows at the shepherd, kill him, and afterwards drive away his whole flock, which perhaps consists of some hundred sheep, and forms the chief, if not the whole, of the farmer's property. What they cannot drive away with them they kill and wound, as far as the time will permit them, while they are making their retreat. It is needless to pursue them, as they are very swift of foot, and take refuge in the steep mountains, which they are able to run up almost as nimbly as baboons or monkies. From thence they roll down large stones, on any one that is so imprudent as to follow them. The approach of night gives them sufficient time to withdraw themselves entirely from those parts, by ways and places to which all but themselves are strangers. These banditti gather together again in bodies to the amount of some hundreds, from their hiding-places and the clefts in the mountains, in order to commit fresh depredations. One of the colonists, who had been forced to fly from these mountains, was at this time passing to *Agter Bruntjes-boogte* with his family, servants, and cattle, with a view to look out for a new dwelling. He told us, that the *Boshies-men* grew bolder every day, and seemed to increase in numbers, since people had with greater earnestness set about extirpating them. It is this, no doubt, which has caused them to collect together into large bodies, that they may be able to withstand the encroachments of the colonists, who have already seized from them their best dwelling and hunting-places. An instance was told me of the Boshies-men having besieged a peasant with his wife and children in their cottage, till he at length

length drove them off by repeatedly firing among them. They had very lately carried off from a farmer the greater part of his cattle. Not long before this, however, they had suffered a considerable defeat in the following manner. Several farmers, who found that they were not able to get at the Boshies-men by the common methods, shot a sea-cow, and took only the principal part of it for themselves, leaving the rest by way of bait; they themselves, in the mean time, lying in ambush. The Boshies-men with their wives and children now came down from their hiding-places, with a view to feast sumptuously on the sea-cow which had been shot; but the farmers, who came back again very unexpectedly, turned the feast into a scene of blood and slaughter.—Pregnant women, and children in their tenderest years, were not on this occasion, nor indeed are they ever, exempt from the effects of the hatred and spirit of vengeance always harboured by the colonists against the nation of Boshies-men; excepting such, indeed, as are singled out to be carried away into bondage. Does a colonist at any time get in view of a Boshies-man, he takes fire immediately, and spirits up his horse and dogs, in order to hunt him with more keenness and fury than he would a wolf or any other wild beast. On an open plain, a few colonists on horseback always get the better of the greatest number of Boshies-men that can be collected together, as the former always keep at about a hundred or a hundred and fifty paces distant, (just as they find it convenient) and charging their heavy fire-arms with a very large kind of shot, leap off their horses, and rest their pieces in their common manner on their ram-rods, in order to shoot with the greater certainty; so that the balls discharged by them will at times, as I have been assured, pierce through the bodies of six, seven, or eight of the enemy at a time, especially as these latter know no better than to keep close together in a body. It is true, that, on the contrary, the Boshies-men can shoot their arrows to the distance of two hundred paces, but with a very uncertain aim, as the arrow must necessarily first make a curve in the air; and should it even at that distance chance to hit any of the farmers, it has not force enough to pierce his hat, or his ordinary linen or coarse wollen coat.

The

The *land-droft* in the district of *Sneeuwberg* has appointed one of the farmers, with the title of *veld-corporal*, to command in these wars, and as circumstances may require, to summon out the country people alternately in separate parties, in order to defend the country against its original inhabitants. Government, indeed, has no other concern in the cruelties exercised by its subjects, than that of taking no cognizance of them; but in this respect it has certainly been too remiss, in subjecting a whole nation to the mercy of every individual peasant, or indeed, of every one who chuses to invade their land; as of such people it might be naturally expected, that interested views, and an unbridled spirit of revenge, should prevail over the dictates of prudence and humanity. I am far from charging all the colonists with having a hand in these and such like cruelties, which are too often committed in this part of the world. While some of them valued themselves upon them, there were many who, on the other hand, held them in abomination, and dreaded lest the vengeance of heaven should, for all these crimes, light upon their land and their posterity.

No endeavours have, it is true, as yet been made to civilize the *Bosbies-man* nation, and make them better men, and more useful to the colonists; but if we may form any judgment from the disposition of those who have either been engaged into the colonists service, or having been made slaves of, have not run away, this appears by no means impossible to be effected. Yet after all, the sentiments that are commonly entertained to their disadvantage, as well as the cruelties which have hitherto been practised upon them, must certainly lay many impediments in the way of an attempt of this nature. If what many have assured me be true, the Hottentots, who originally resided at *Agter Brunijes-boogte*, lived peaceably with the Christians who first migrated thither. They used also to perform the kindest offices for the latter, and would often go unasked in search of a strayed lamb, or the like, belonging to the Christians, and take it home to them; but they at length withdrew themselves, and now live concealed in holes and corners up and down this part of the country like other *Bosbies-men*. Yet, their numbers being fewer, they are not quite so bold and

and daring. Their complexions being rather of a yellow cast, they are considered as of a different nation, and consequently have been called *Chinese*- or *Snefe*-Hottentots. The chief resort of these fugitives is on each side of the two *Visch-riviers*; and many of them whom I saw had been good serviceable slaves. While we, like them, were ranging up and down between the two *Visch-rivers*, we came at times to the very spots, where the remains of their extinguished fires were plainly discerned, with other marks of their having been encamped there: and in my opinion, it would not have been difficult for them to have distressed us and done us much mischief; but whether it was their stupidity, the gentleness of their dispositions, or their fears that withheld them I know not, but they certainly did not do it. If, indeed, the gentleness of their dispositions alone conducted them in this matter, their conduct is by no means justifiable; for considering it in this light, one may justly say, that they commit a crime against themselves, in leaving the colonists at peace, to pursue them and enslave them at their own convenience.

Another and still considerable part of this yellow-skinned nation, is scattered over a tract of country eleven days journey in breadth, and situated more to the north than to the north-east of the *Visch-riviers*, near a river called *Zomo*, where some of them it is said are occupied in the grazing and rearing of cattle. It is true, sundry small parties of Christians have at different times travelled through this country, and shot elephants there undisturbed; but yet they have thought it necessary for their greater security, to shut themselves up at night in their waggons, as in a castle.

The larger rivers which run through the country of the *Snefe*-Hottentots, are said to be only the following. *t'Kamfi-t'kay*, *t'Nu-t'kay*, *Little Zomo*, and *Great Zomo*, at which latter a country commences, belonging to a different nation. These rivers are said to flow from north to south and south-east, down towards the sea, whither they probably run all together through the country called *Caffer-land*. From *t'Kau-t'kay*, or the great fish river, to *t'Kamfi-t'kay*, or the white river, they compute that it is seven days journey; every day's journey being

being reckoned at above forty-five miles, or eight hours brisk driving of oxen without stopping. From thence to *Nu-i-kay*, or the black river, it is reckoned one day's journey. From hence to Little Zomo, or the little *Watery-eyed* river, it is two days journey; and from this to Great Zomo, or the great *Watery-eye*, it is half a day's journey. In this river, which is one of the largest, there is said to lie a great number of green stones, some of which the person who gave me this information, carried with him to the Cape, and sold them to a dealer there, who sold them again, and made presents of them to travellers. They were, probably, of very little value.

Another nation dwells on the other side of Zomo, who, by the Snese-Hottentots, are called *Tambukis*, and by them are said to resemble themselves, viz. the Snese-Hottentots, in dress and complexion, but to be a powerful and warlike people. Adjoining to this nation, towards the north, there is, by their account, a still more warlike and intrepid people, whom they call *Mambukis*. Such colonists as have visited Zomo-river, have remarked, that about two days journey to the northward of it, there is a mountain which throws out a great quantity of smoke. The Snese-Hottentots told me, that the *Tambukis* had furnaces there for the purpose of smelting a kind of metal, which they forge and make into ornaments of different kinds, hiring the Snese-Hottentots to carry in the wood which they use in their smeltings. I have often seen the Snese-Hottentots at *Bruntjes-Hoogte* with ear-rings of this metal, and of the shape delineated in Plate II. Vol. I. fig. 8 and 9. Their outward appearance resembles pistole gold; but from the attempt made on one of these rings by M. von ENGSTROEM, Intendant of the mines, they seem to be nothing more than a mixture of silver and copper.

That remarkable animal, the *unicorn*, which is commonly represented like a horse with a horn in its forehead, has been found delineated by the Snese-Hottentots on the plain surface of a rock somewhere in that country, though in as uncouth and artless a style, as might naturally be expected from so rude and unpolished a people. JACOB KOK, that great traveller and attentive observer of nature, whom I mentioned before at Vol. I. page 251.

is my only informer on this subject. The Snese-Hottentots told him, that by this drawing they meant to represent an animal, which, in point of resemblance, came nearest to the horses on which he and his company rode, but which at the same time had a horn in its forehead. To the above account it was added, that these animals were scarce, extremely swift of foot, furious and dangerous; so that, when they went out in pursuit of them they did not venture to attack them at close quarters, nor appear before them on the open plains, but were forced to clamber up some high cliff or rock, and there make a clattering noise; by which means they knew that the beast, being of a curious disposition, would be enticed towards the spot, where they might, without danger, destroy it by means of their poisoned arrows. It would appear, that a rude and uncivilized people like the Snese-Hottentots, could not easily counterfeit, and, by the mere force of imagination, represent to themselves such animals and at the same time so particularly relate the manner in which they hunted them. It is still less credible, that these savages should have been able to preserve any recollection of the occurrences and relations of former times with regard to this animal. Neither is it any wonder, that a sketch of the unicorn should be seen here only at one place. For generally little or nothing is to be seen in passing through this country, which is only resorted to for the purpose of hunting elephants. As I have accidentally hinted at the subject of the elephant, it is worth while to observe, that even this, the largest of all animals on the face of the globe, which is so general and so much enquired after in Africa, and so often tamed, and at the same time so much used, and in consequence so well known in Asia, has been hitherto, as it were, unknown, and the subject of much disputation as to an essential point, I mean the manner of its copulation, as I have related above at page 233, Vol. I. It is therefore not so much a matter of surprise, that of an animal less in bulk, and much less common we should know nothing. And though I should have objections to the testimony given me by my informer, as well as to that of the Snese-Hottentots, on the subject of the unicorn, yet its existence should not on that account be considered as a fable

fable, although it is not known in these more modern times.

Not many years since the mention of the *camelopardalis*, the tallest of all quadrupeds, when measured at the fore part, has been revived by naturalists; this too has been the case with the *gnu*. A drawing of this singular animal, the *camelopardalis*, appears also to have been given us by the ancients; but who, till these our days, ever considered it in any other light than that of a fable, a monster, or, at least, a monstrous medley, existing only in the brain? When we consider, besides, that the *hippopotamus*, which is probably a larger animal, though somewhat lower than the elephant, has been hitherto very little known; as also that, till the present hour, we have been almost total strangers even to the *rhinoceros bicornis*, may we not expect that there will be a period, when the unicorn and all other beasts and insects, animated by the Creator of all things, but unknown to us at present, will be brought out of their holes and hiding places into the light? The following extract of a letter from M. PALLAS, dated the 14th of December, 1778, which, on account of the good sense and information with which it abounds, I shall take the liberty of inserting in this place, will tend to confirm us in the idea, that the unicorn is a real, and not an imaginary animal.

“Quod monocerotem in interioribus Africæ partibus etiamnum latere suspicionem moves, id quidem mihi haud inexpectatum; certoque jamdudum persuasus sum, non ex nihilo apud veteres illam fuisse famam; sed vel casu unicornes antilopas, de quibus in XII. Fasciculo Spicilegiorum dixi, ansam dedisse, vel peculiarem forte speciem unicornem, nobis hucusque ignotam, antiquitus innotuisse, quando interiora Africæ itineratoribus Europæis erant frequentiora. Si non incidisti forsan in locum relationis Ludovici Barthema, ubi Monocerotes duos Meccæ ad templum, in theriotrophæo visos, describit; vide illam, quæso, in Vol. I. collection. Ramusii, p. 151. b. Nescio quid hominem excitare potuisset ad fingendâ, quæ ibi refulit, quæque non ita male cohærent.

I have never yet been able to get a sight of the *Col-
lectioner Ramusii* M. PALLAS refers to*.—As to other par-
ticulars, I have been told by the colonists at *Agter Brunt-
jes Hoogte*, that the district of country lying between them
and Zomo, or the *Tambukis*, consisted in a great degree
of

* The passage in VARTHEMA here referred to is as follows :

“ Da un'altra banda del dicto tempio e una murata, nella quale
sta dentro dui unicorni vivi & li se mostrano per cosa grandissima
come e certo. Li quali diro come sono facti. El maggior facto co-
mo un polledro di trenta mesi & ha uno corno nella fronte, el quale
corno sie circa tre braccia di longheza. L'altro unicorno sie come
serio un polledro de uno anno, & ha un corno longo circa quatro
palmi. El colore del dicto animale sie come un cavallo saginato scu-
ro : & ha la testa come un cervo & ha el collo non molto longo con
elschuna crina rara & curta che pendeno ad una banda : & ha la
gamba sottile & asciuta come un capriolo : el pede suo e un poco
fesso davanti & longia e caprina : & ha certi pelli dalla banda di
dietro veramenti questa mostra de essere un ferocissima & deserto ani-
male. Et questi dui animali furono presentati allo Soldano della
Mecha, per la piu bella cosa ah' hoggi se trovi al mondo & per piu
ricco thesoro liquali furono mandati da uno Re de Ethiopia : zoe da
un Re Moro, el quale li fece questo presente perfare parentato con
el dicto Soldano de la Mecha.”

“ On the other side of the temple there is a court-yard encompass-
ed with high walls, where we saw two unicorns, which were shewn
as great rarities, and indeed are fit subjects for admiration. The form
of them is as follows. The larger one resembles a foal of two years and
a half old, and has a horn in its forehead about 3 cubits in length. The
other unicorn was less, being nearly as large as a foal of a year old, and
had a horn 4 palms long. The colour of this animal is that of a dark
dun horse; its head is like that of a stag, its neck of a moderate length,
furnished with some thinly scattered short hairs that hang down on
one side : its legs are long and slender like those of a roe; the feet
are somewhat cloven in the fore part, and the hoofs are like those
of a goat. It has on the back part of its legs a great quantity of
hair, a circumstance which gives this animal a fierce appearance;
though, in fact, the beast is tame and gentle in its nature. Both
the animals were presented to the Sultan of Mecca as very great ra-
rities, and which are to be found in very few parts of the globe, by
an Ethiopian King, who sought for the Sultan's friendship.

The foregoing passage is extracted from the original, in the libra-
ry of the President of the Royal Society. The book itself, the title
of which is as follows, *Itinerario de Ludovico de Varthema, Bolognese
ne lo Egypto, ne lo Suria, ne la Arabia, &c. (Venezia, 1517, 8vo.)*
is exceedingly scarce, and does not appear to have been seen either
by M. PALLAS, Dr SPARMAN, or his German commentator Mr
FORSTER. The translation of this passage is made from RAMUSIO,
who has modernized this author, or rather re-translated him from a
Latin version, which is itself a translation only from the Spanish; so
that the Italian original must have been lost for some time.

of very extensive and barren plains; that the farther they proceeded to the northward, the less they knew of the vegetables they discovered; that there grew in these parts a kind of blood-tree, &c. that on travelling from the upper part of *Visch-rivier* more to the south-east, or the *Caffre* side of the country, one would meet with a river called *Konap*, which was supposed to run into *Visch-rivier*; but advancing two days journey farther, going from *Konap*-river towards the north-east, there was a river, called *Kaifi-kamma*, which had its source from a hill known to the colonists by the name of the *Bambus-berg*, or Bamboo-mountain, owing to the circumstance of a sort of reeds or bamboos growing upon it, which they very much valued for the purpose of making handles to their long whips.

Groote-rivier, or *Great river*, it is said is the largest river in Africa, and is no otherwise known than by the account the Hottentots give of it. It is said to contain a great number of sea-cows or river-horses, which were very bold and enterprising; so that it cannot, without hazard, be navigated for the purpose of exploring the country farther up. It is said to lie directly to the northward, eight or ten days journey distant from the *Sneeuw-bergen*. It was reported to rise in the east, and run on strait towards the north. It is not improbable that this river soon after turns off to the south and the west, and is the same *Groote-rivier* which I have marked in my map, on the authority of M. HENRY HOP's *Journal of an Expedition made to the District of Anamaquas*, published in a compilation under the title of *Nouvelle Description du Cap de bonne Esperance*, which I mentioned already. This river, however, must not be mistaken for another of the same name, which runs into the sea at the eastern shore of Africa and the coast of the Caffres.

The Caffre country lies to the east of *Great Visc-rivier*, nearest the coast. The Inhabitants, the Caffres, have no idea of the breeding of sheep, their only employment being the rearing of horned cattle, and, like the *Gonaquas* Hottentots, wearing cow-hides, which are well rubbed and dressed with grease, till they become soft and pliable. Their houses, or huts, are said to be square and small,

built of rods, and covered with clay and cow-dung, which gives them the appearance of small stone houses.

The only weapons used by the Caffres are shields made of shoe-sole-leather, and hassagais, or that kind of javelin consisting of a slender and light wooden shaft, headed with a broad and rather heavy iron plate, which I have delineated in Plate II. Vol. I. fig. 1 and 2, and have taken notice of at page 7 of this Volume, as being made use of by the Gonaquas Hottentots.

The nation is governed by many different chiefs, who probably have all their subjects' property vested in themselves, and at the same time have an absolute authority over them. As far as I could learn, their state and power are hereditary. It is said that they are often at war with each other, and that they always kill the prisoners they take. But if a chief should happen to fall into the enemy's hands, he is not put to death, but is sent back again with admonitions to behave himself more peaceably in future. The occasion of their wars is commonly the same as in other parts of the globe, viz. either a want of the common sentiments of humanity in one of the contending powers, or their arrogant and rapacious disposition, or else some bone of contention which neither side can persuade themselves to give up, without shedding their own blood and that of their fellow-creatures. It is even said, that a stolen or strayed calf, or one grazing upon the territories of a neighbouring country, or other matters equally trifling, will sometimes be sufficient to set two or more nations together by the ears. Neither of the parties, however, carry their revenge so far as to extirpate the other, but are satisfied when their adversary yields the day and sues for peace.

The Dutch colonists have, by means of the following occurrence, of which I do not remember exactly the year, inspired the Caffre nation with no small degree of terror. A man of the name of HEUPPENAER, made an expedition, at the head of a small party of farmers, into the Caffre country, with a view to shoot elephants. The Caffres, who took a fancy to the iron-work of their wag-gons, and some other articles they had with them, came in a body, consisting of some hundred men, and on a sudden threw such a number of darts among the colonists, that

that the greater part of them were killed; a dart also pierced through the tilt of a waggon and killed HEUPPENAER, who was sitting in it. The blame of this was in a great measure thrown upon HEUPPENAER, who was too high-spirited to shew any fear, and, agreeably to the advice of his companions, take to his weapons in time. One of them, who was said to be still living in the colony, had escaped, though half drowned, by hiding himself for the space of twenty-four hours under a large water-fall. Other two found an opportunity of riding away, and afterwards harassing the Caffres a long time on the plain, by firing among them, whenever they came near a party of these savages, at the same time leaping from their horses in order to take a better aim, by which means they killed several at one shot. This fracas, and the manner in which it was revenged, have taught the Caffres ever since, to lay a greater restraint on their desires for the iron-work of the colonists waggons.

I met with a farmer in *Lange-Kloof*, who was just returned alone from this country, and had brought with him several elephants teeth. In return for some tobacco which he had presented to a Caffre prince, this latter had ordered his subjects to shew him the places where the elephants were to be found.

A tract of country situated near the mouth of *Groote Visch-rivier*, in my map I have called by the name of *King Ruyter's Craal*, in commemoration of a Hottentot king, or, as he was styled by the colonists, a Hottentot captain, called RUYTER. I have met with several Christians who had paid a visit to this remarkable man, and related to me his life and adventures, which briefly are as follows. While he was in service at a farmer's at *Rogge-veld*, he chanced to have a quarrel with another Hottentot his companion, and murdered him; and as he was afraid of being hanged, agreeably to the laws of the colony, for this action, he ran away. After a variety of adventures, he at length arrived in that part of the country which lies near *Boshies-man's-rivier*, where by his intrepidity, he raised himself to be the chief of a party of Boshies-men, or Hottentot rangers. At the head of these he subjugated several other tribes, and afterwards had the cunning to make them take arms against the Caffres, by

raising in them a mistrust of each other; and at the same time inspiring them with a high opinion of himself, as being of so great importance to them in the capacity of their chief or leader, that they could not possibly do without him; especially as he supplied them better with plunder, and taught them a better method of rearing their cattle, than ever in either case they had been accustomed to.

While on the one hand, by such conduct, he rendered himself highly formidable to the Caffres, on the other he took care, by inflicting the punishment of death on his subjects for the most trifling fault, or even on the least suspicion of a fault, to exact (and for a long time received) the most servile submission and implicit obedience from the simple unpolished mortals he had gathered together in order to tyrannize over. He used often to put to death one or more of these slavish vassals, with his own hand, and would immediately throw his javelin through the body of any of his attendants, that hesitated at his nod to dispatch the man whom he had marked out as the victim of his cruel and revengeful disposition.

Aside from the dictates of a false and ill-judged policy, perhaps the natural turn of the tyrant's mind induced him to be guilty of these cruelties; but when the Christians reproached him with the barbarity and blood-thirstiness of his disposition, he replied, "It was in a lucky hour that I conveyed myself out of the reach of your authority. You would have hanged me for having killed my antagonist, as if I had committed a crime, when at the same time, to kill an enemy is reckoned a laudable and manly action." To the colonists he was always a true and faithful ally; and in return for the tobacco and other articles they presented him with, used to assist them in making slaves of such straggling Boshiesmen as did not live under his jurisdiction. By keeping the Caffres at a proper distance, he not only served his own purpose, but was also of much use to the colonists. But notwithstanding his caution in maintaining peace with his more powerful neighbours the Christians, yet it is alledged, that when he was in the meridian of life, and at the height of his power, he received them with a remarkable degree of pride and arrogance; which, as
my

my informer expressed himself, they could not easily digest from a wandering *sheep-skin* prince. He succeeded, however, in keeping up his dignity with them as well as with his own people. At present, he was old and infirm, and nothing more than a director of a more inconsiderable and freer society, to the number of about two hundred people, he is accustomed to receive his old Christian acquaintances in the most friendly manner, with tears in his eyes, and at the same time to seek tobacco from them, no longer as his tribute, but as a compliment which he is willing to accept as a piece of bounty.

His despotic and tyrannical conduct by which he formerly made himself so remarkable, and for some time so powerful and so much dreaded, is probably the cause of his being now reduced to the low situation in which he is; and it is supposed, will reduce him in time to a still more abject and lower condition. This great man may, probably, at last come to the miserable situation of the lion in the fable. Another reason of his present degradation is, that his subjects, weary of the ambition and severe discipline of their chief, took an opportunity to desert from him, at the very time when he was gallantly marching at their head against the Caffres.

Being no longer so swift for running as he was in his youth, he could not effect his escape, and was consequently taken prisoner; but being recognized, as a chief, his life was preserved, agreeable to the custom I have already mentioned, as being established among the Caffres, and he was sent back to his own people; yet not without being threatened with the loss of his eyes, if he should ever rise in arms against them in time to come. This misfortune, and the salutary lesson his enemies gave him, were not forcible enough, however, as soon as he had again gathered together a number of his people, to divert his hostile plans against the Caffres. It was alledged, that he had of late endeavoured to stir up another petty Boshiess-man chief against them, and had got promises of assistance from him, as soon as he could get iron to point his arrows with, and make the other necessary preparations. They were afraid, and not without cause, that the old tyrant in this proposed expedition of his would meet with that death, which, wearied of himself and his
bad

bad fortune, he appeared to be in quest of. He had, according to a custom prevalent among the Hottentots, appointed the youngest of his three sons as heir to his throne and possessions. Neither of the three, however, was thought to inherit the talents and abilities of the father in a sufficient degree, to be able to establish himself in the throne.

The methods of fighting among the Caffres and Hottentots are very different. The Caffres, as we have already mentioned, employ darts, which they cannot discharge with any success at a greater distance than twenty or thirty paces. Of these darts they only carry into the field with them about three or four; so that they are soon disarmed, in case their antagonists are bold and quick enough to pick up these weapons as soon as the Caffres have thrown them from their hands. The Caffres, besides, make use of a shield made of shoe-sole leather, and sufficiently large to cover their bodies completely, on their skinking themselves up into a rather smaller compass. I have seen a bastard Caffre perform his exercise with these weapons; from whence I concluded, that when they are in real engagement, they shift their bodies constantly from one side to the other, so that they cannot be easily hit, taking care all the time to keep their *hassagais* or darts in readiness, to throw at the unprotected part of their antagonists. The Boshies-men, on the contrary, who have no shields, are an over-match for the Caffres, so long as they can keep them at a good distance from them by means of their bows and poisoned arrows, of which, the wound, though not so immediately painful as the *hassagais* of the Caffres, are in fact more dangerous in the issue.

It was owing to this circumstance, that RUYTER'S Boshies-men got the better of the Caffres for so long a time. It has therefore been a matter of surprise, that the Caffres have never acquired the use of the bow and arrow, in the same manner as their enemies the Boshies-men. This mode of fighting does not appear to require great courage, nor indeed does it seem calculated to give either nation a disposition to it.

If I may be permitted to judge from two examples, the slaves of the Christians are of a much more warlike disposition.

disposition. These, of consequence, when they elope from the service of their masters, are sure of a good reception and protection from the Caffres. At least, a Caffre prince, although he had a genteel consideration offered him, had just before our arrival in these quarters, refused to deliver up two slaves belonging to the Christians; alledging, as the cause of his refusal, that they were his best warriors.

Before I go on, in the order of my journal, to speak of *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, where I resided for some time, I must only mention the following particulars relative to a province immediately adjoining to it.

Camdebo is a dry, flat, *Carrow-like* tract of country, possessed by Christians, whose chief employment is to rear cattle. This district it is said extends as far as the south side of the *Sneeuw* mountains. From the accounts and information that were given me, I have laid down two different roads in my map, by which travellers may go to the Cape through *Camdebo*, both from *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte* and from the *Sneeuwbergen*. The north road it is said goes to *Anthou-veld*, *Kau-veld*, and *Bokke-veld*. The southern road goes downwards to *Oliphant's-rivier*, and so along that to the high way, by which I went myself, and which I have accordingly laid down in my map. You may also turn out of this southern road before, and go by *Platte-kloof*, *Hex-rivier*, and so forward to the Cape. The inhabitants of *Camdebo* and *Sneeuwberg* have also, it is alledged, found out a bye-road, though rough and intricate, down by the side of *Zondags-rivier* to *Zwartkops-rivier*, in order to procure salt at the salt-pits already described.

These two roads through *Camdebo*, &c. are, indeed the nearest from *Bruntjes-hoogte* to the *Cape*; and in fact, the only road that travellers take. But the tracts of country through which they are carried, are said to be but thinly inhabited, very dry, and deficient in pasturage, and still more so in the article of water; especially that year, which was imagined to be the driest in the memory of man, so that some particular watering-places were entirely dried up. I was told of a traveller, the greater part of whose oxen had fainted and died upon the road on account of this circumstance. Consequently,

17, our beasts, which were too few in number to be able to release each other much, by this time wearied out, and not accustomed to the dry bushes of the Carrow country, were the more likely to perish, had we not, from these considerations, suffered ourselves to be entirely dissuaded from travelling by these roads. I was also forced to give up all thoughts of visiting *Sneeuwberg* and *Camdebo*, on account of the disorder among the horses, which was said to be very rife at this time, and had already reached almost as far as to *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*. In this place, however, there were many birds, insects, and animals which I had not seen in other parts and which gave me sufficient employment. Besides, my present host, who wished to keep me with him for the sake of two people who were sick in his house, was extremely kind to me, and assisted me much in my researches; and, together with one of his sons and his son-in-law, accompanied me afterwards on a hunting-party down *Visch-rivier*, which lasted for a fortnight, and of which I shall hereafter give an account.

Having so many subjects to employ myself upon, I was almost tempted to winter here, with a view to make a trip the following spring to the *Tambuki* mines, and at the same time to go in search of the unicorn. Indeed, both Mr IMMELMAN and myself endeavoured to persuade several farmers to equip themselves for this undertaking. This scheme they had no great objection to, but could not give me a positive answer on the subject; and indeed, after a more mature consideration of the matter, I found, that I had neither money nor gun-powder enough for the purpose, not to mention many other good reasons which prevented me from putting it into execution. I was therefore forced, though sore against my inclination, to give up all thoughts of this excursion; though afterwards I was not very sorry at having met with the disappointment, being pretty well convinced, that another year's fatigue would not have contributed much more to my future happiness.

In the mean time, after five years absence, spent in travels and voyages to various parts of the globe, I imagine it will scarcely be necessary to make any apology for turning my thoughts towards home also. Happy if my

any humble endeavours should excite other naturalists to pursue the same path with greater success, and make us acquainted with the remaining curious and remarkable objects, which are doubtless still to be found in the southern parts of Africa.

Consequently, *Agter Bruntjes-boogte* is the northermost part that I visited of the whole colony; and, in my opinion, it is also the most pleasant. There was still remaining on the ground, a more meadow-like verdure than is commonly seen in this country; a verdure that owed its existence of the shade afforded to the soil by the thorny branches to the *mimosa nilotica*, and was still further enlivened by the numerous yellow blossoms of that plant. The great quantity of beautiful vernal lilies, together with a peculiar *parasitic* plant of a blood-red hue, (described by me in the Swedish Transactions for 1776, page 307) which were now springing up out of their beds that were covered with a more verdant and luxuriant herbage than the other parts of this country, must doubtless, at the season when they came into bloom, add still more to the splendour of this delightful scene. This, however, was not a little heightened by a purling stream, viz. Little *Visch-rivier*, which winds through this spot in sportive meanders. Besides corn fields, on its banks were seen scattered up and down, pleasure- and kitchen-gardens newly laid out, and some of them cut through with drains: plantations, which though they were as yet inconsiderable, appeared, however, to promise every thing to time and industry. The houses, far from intimidating the traveller by their splendid appearance, with the constrained pomp of drawing-rooms and antichambers, were rather in the style of plain and simple cottages; but, on the other hand, were environed with the animated embellishments of cattle and sheep, and inhabited by people in easy circumstances; who, not with interested views, but with open arms received me and my companion, just arrived from the dreary and inhospitable desert, and charmed us with their kind and friendly behaviour.

The superior degree of fertility, and the more delightful verdure which I here found, ought, perhaps, to be attributed to a ridge of mountains on the east side of Little *Visch-rivier*, which was intersected by beautiful green
valleys

vallies interspersed with woods. These mountains, by collecting the clouds together, caused them to fall in refreshing showers of rain on the banks of the river that ran at their feet: and the high degree of fertility occasioned by these circumstances, invited not only the antelopes and other animals of the chase to this side of the country, but also induced various kinds of beautiful birds to resort to it, and build their nests in the trees that grew on the banks of the river.

What contributes not a little to this fertility is, that the land is fresh, that is to say, not yet worn out by being too often and too closely grazed off by the numerous flocks and herds of the Christians, (vide Vol I. p. 179, 180.)

All the colonists who pursue the grazing business, and particularly those at *Ager Bruntjes-boogte*, lead an easy and pleasant life. One of those boors generally puts to his plough eight or ten of his fat, or rather pampered oxen; and it is hardly to be imagined, with what little trouble he gets into order a field of a moderate size; and in consequence of his feeding so great a number of cattle, how easily he can render it in the highest degree fertile. So that, always certain of a rich harvest from a soil not yet worn out, and which always fully repays the culture bestowed upon it, he may almost be said to make the cultivation of it, for the bread he stands in need of for himself and his family a mere matter of amusement; while many other husbandmen must sweat and toil themselves almost to death, both for what they use themselves and for that which is consumed by others (who often live in ease and indolence) in towns and cities. By means of his extensive pastures, and by throwing a proper quantity of land into tillage, he is able to keep a good number of horses, which often are used only a few days in a year, for the purpose of treading out and threshing his corn. With pleasure, but without the least trouble to himself, he sees the herds and flocks, which constitute his riches, daily and considerably increasing. These are driven to pasture and home again by a few Hottentots or slaves, who also make the butter; so that it is almost only with the milking, that the farmer, together with his wife and children, concern themselves at all.

To perform this business, however, he has no occasion to get up sooner than seven or eight o'clock in the morning; and notwithstanding his having enjoyed his bed so long in the morning, he can afford, without neglecting any thing of consequence, to allow himself a nap in the afternoon, an indulgence which the heat of the climate renders more agreeable there than in our northern regions.

That they might not put their arms and bodies out of the easy and commodious posture in which they had laid them on the couch when they were taking their afternoon's *siesta*, they have been known to receive travellers lying quite still and motionless, excepting that they have very politely pointed out the road, by moving their foot to the right or left. Professor THUNBERG, who has had more opportunities than I had of exploring the warmer Carrow districts, (vide Vol. I. page 175) where the inhabitants were still more indolent, has given me an account much to the same purpose.

The leaning of their arms on the table at meal times, is a custom very common with the colonists, and thought by them a very laudable one, and in this particularly I followed my host's example; but I could not sufficiently admire the inventive spirit of idleness, exhibited in the voluptuous posture in which they universally indulge themselves when they smoke their pipes. Sitting on a bench or a chair without elbows, with their backs moderately bent, they lay their left leg over their right knee, and again upon the left knee thus raised, they rest their left elbow, while with the hand on the same side they support their chin, or one of their cheeks, at the same time holding their pipes in their mouths. Their right hand is then at liberty to grasp the small of their left leg with, or else to convey now and then to their mouth a cooling draught of tea. Let the reader figure to himself several people sitting together in this posture, and he will readily conceive what an elegant appearance they would make in a group. I never saw any of the fair sex, however, in a posture of this kind. Among a set of people so entirely devoted to their ease, one might naturally expect to meet with a variety of the most commodious easy chairs and sofas; but the truth is, that

they find it much more commodious to avoid the trouble of inventing and making them.

I remarked as a very singular circumstance, that a wealthy farmer at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, who had plenty of timber to sell, notwithstanding, had only a ricketty elbow-chair in his house, and a few scanty stools of the most simple construction, made of a single board, with four rough-hewn ill-shapen legs. What, however, was still more singular was, that notwithstanding that one of these stools had lost a leg, yet it was often made use of to the endangering of the person's limbs who sat upon it, without either the master of the house or any of his three sons, who were however all alert enough at the chase, having ever once thought of mending it. Nor did the inhabitants of this place exhibit much less simplicity and moderation, or to speak more properly, slovenliness and penury in their dress than in their furniture; neither of which, therefore, were in any wise answerable to the large flocks and herds which these graziers possess, and the plentiful tables they could afford to keep by means of these possessions. Their distance from the Cape, may, indeed, be some apology for their having no other earthen ware or china in their houses, but what was cracked or broken: but this, in my opinion, should not hinder them from having at least more than one or two old pewter pots, and some few plates of the same metal; so that two people are often obliged to eat out of the same dish, and to use it for every different article of food which comes upon table.

Every guest must bring his knife along with him, and they generally use their fingers for forks. The wealthiest farmer here is considered as being well dressed when in a jacket of home-made cloth, or something of the kind made of any other coarse cloth, breeches of undressed leather, a striped waistcoat, woollen stockings, a cotton handkerchief about his neck, a coarse callico shirt, Hottentot field-shoes, or else shoes made of leather, with brass buckles, and a coarse hat. In fact, it is not in dress, but in the number and thriving state of their cattle, and principally in the stoutness of their draught-oxen, that these peasants are emulous to vie with each other. It is also by activity and manly actions, and by other si-

similar qualities, which make a man fit for the married state, and the rearing of a family, that the youth principally obtain the favour of the fair sex; none of whom were ever known, for the sake of contending with each other in point of dress, to have brought either their husband's property or their own virtue in danger. A plain close cap, and a coarse cotton gown, virtue and good housewifery, are considered by the fair sex as sufficient embellishments for their persons; a disposition for flirting, coquetry and paint, would have very little effect in making conquests among young men, educated in so hardy a manner, and who have had so homely and artless an education, as the youth in this place. In short, if any where in the world, one may lead an innocent, virtuous, and happy life in this country.

I frequently used, when in company with these plain artless farmers, to start such questions and subjects of conversation, as served to give them a proper sense of the happiness of their situation, and make them put a higher value upon it, than they perhaps had done before. Indeed, I thought I could not more properly or more agreeably employ the little Dutch I had acquired than in persuading the good people among whom I travelled, to be satisfied with their lot, and consequently to be happy. One day, when I was enforcing this point, I got the following pertinent, but kind reply, from a discreet sensible woman, daughter to an inferior magistrate at *Zwellendam*, who was married to a yeoman in this place.

"My good friend, said she, you speak like a prudent sensible man; I am wholly of your opinion, and wish you every happiness that can attend you: why need you wander any longer up and down the world in search of happiness? You find it here, and are welcome to enjoy it among us. You are already possessed of a waggon, oxen, and saddle horses; these are the chief things necessary in order to set up a farmer; there are yet uncultivated places enough in this neighbourhood, proper either for pasturage or tillage, so that you may choose out an extensive tract of land the spot which pleases you most. Here are people enough, who will entrust you with that part of their cattle which they cannot conveniently look after themselves.

themselves, on condition that you shall get the young ones produced by them for your trouble. In this way, many young beginners have acquired a competency in a few years. With your knowledge of disorders and plants, you may make yourself serviceable to your neighbours, and now and then procure a heifer or a calf. In short, I will venture to foretel, that you will soon have cows and sheep in abundance. Yet there is still another want, which is most requisite to your happiness; that is, a prudent and discreet wife: take my advice and look about you, and I will venture to assure you, that you will not be long in this country without one."

This advice, so agreeable to the language of nature, and resulting from such kind intention from the fair sex, could not but greatly affect me: it is singular, however, that the poor woman who gave it me, was herself cursed with a bad husband.

As a farther evidence, that it is not so much to the different proportions in which nature has diffused her bounties over the place where a man resides, as to himself and his fellow-creatures, that he ought to impute his felicity, I had the mortification to see the peace of this happy spot interrupted by the discord of two neighbours.

Having for some time departed in my narration from the order of my journal, I will here resume it. I remained at *Ager Brunjes-haogte* till the 21st day of January. During this time my oxen, which before were very lean, had got into good condition; and we, for our own parts, took care, by drinking butter-milk in abundance, and by doing justice to the good fare set before us in great plenty by these worthy rustics, to make ourselves amends for the hunger, thirst, and other hardships we had undergone for a whole month in the desert. Among other delicacies, we were entertained on the 3d of January with a dish, as delicious as it was uncommon, taken from about forty calves which had been castrated that day. The women too partook of this dish without blushing.

I have already hinted, that I had felt on my way hither some little forebodings of the gout; and at this place it increased so much, that on the 8th and 9th of January I could scarcely stand on either foot. The sinews and

articulations of my feet were affected with a stiffness, which was attended with an acute pain and dry heat diffused over the skin itself, and led me to think of the vapour-bath, as being a powerfully emollient remedy. The quick relief I had seen afforded by artificial warm baths to two gouty patients in Africa, as well as the benefits resulting in similar disorders from the use of the natural warm baths in this country, added to my being unable to support either the pain or loss of time occasioned by this disorder, led me also soon to make the experiment on myself, and thereby entirely subdue both the complaint in my foot, and the common prejudice, that the gout will not endure water.

The apparatus was fully as simple and easy as the remedy. My feet were placed twice a day for three or four hours at a time, on a stick laid across a tub of warm water, in which the steam and heat were confined by means of cloths, and supported by the addition of heated stones. At intervals I put my foot also down into the water, but this did not appear to produce such speedy and evident relief as the vapour did, but rather occasioned a swelling in the feet, with some degree of spasm. A few days after I was entirely recovered, and about the same time had the pleasure of restoring, by means of this bath also, a farmer's wife, (who had likewise a bad habit of body,) in some measure to the use of her feet; though for several weeks before, she had not been able to put them to the ground, on account of the pain and swelling in them.

Since my return to Sweden, I have not been able to persuade any gouty person in similar circumstances to make use of this remedy; though I can now also appeal to the universally as well as justly celebrated Dr TRISSOT, who, in a case he has published, endeavours to oppose the prejudices entertained against luke-warm pediluviums in the gout. (Vid. his *Essai sur les Maladies des Gens du monde*, p. 142. Lausanne, 1772.)

The above-mentioned farmer's wife, was one of the two patients on whose account, as I have already mentioned, I found it necessary to protract my stay in this place longer than I at first proposed. The other was a boy of ten years of age, who had been confined to bed

upwards of six months with a fistulous ulcer in the thigh attended with a hectic fever and great pain, all which were imagined to have proceeded merely from his having jumped off a waggon three feet high. The part afflicted with pain, which afterwards began to break out in ulcers, had been dressed ever since, agreeable to a method as commonly practised in this country as it is hurtful, with hot and irritating cataplasms made of aromatic herbs. But having enlarged the wound, and dressed it for a considerable time with a salve composed of honey mixed with a little oil and melted wax, the patient's diet all the while consisting only of wort, milk, and greens, with a little bread at times, I was able to extract a splinter of a bone three inches long, and three fingers broad, after which the whole seemed disposed to heal very quickly.

Although by simple and very easy remedies of this kind, the lives of the African rustics might be for the most part preserved, and the calamities attendant on life be mitigated; yet in this simple and truly pastoral mode of life, so universally famous for its felicity, and in the midst of their delightful parks and meadows, still they are so far unlucky, that, when they are attacked by any disorder, they are either wholly ignorant of the remedies best fitted to the cure of it, or for the most part apply them with great imprudence; and at the same time are at the distance of many hundred, and, indeed, it may be said, some thousands of miles from those, from whose advice alone and assistance they have ground to expect relief. And in this one respect at least, their much-vaunted pastoral course of life, with all its simplicity and concomitant ignorance, is less to be valued than our more populous and better regulated societies in towns and cities; where, besides the advantages resulting to mankind from all the other sciences, that of medicine in particular remarkably contributes to the happiness enjoyed by mortals in this life.

It seemed to me very remarkable, that the colonists had very little, and, indeed, I may say, no knowledge at all of one of the most frequent and most troublesome disorders to which they were subject, and that was worms. Adults, and even elderly persons, seemed to be more generally troubled with this complaint than children; particularly

particularly with the tape worm, the symptoms of which were likewise often to be plainly discovered in men of the healthiest appearance. Besides a great number of the more common symptoms, which denote the existence of these animals, most of the patients complained of an oppression at the breast, and an anxiety about the præcordia, (*borst quaal en benaauwde borst*,) for which cause the greater part of them, some of their own heads, and others in consequence of the advice of quacks at the Cape, kept themselves weak and low by a spare diet and remedies against the consumption of the lungs, and often stedfastly persisted in this treatment of themselves; though the longer they pursued it, the worse they grew. Nay, under the apprehension of their lungs being diseased, they had even given up their much loved brandy; though at the same time they confessed that they never had observed it was in any ways hurtful to them as to the principal complaint. Having, therefore, during the oppression on the chest, the swoonings, or the difficulty of breathing with which they were seized, been advised by me to take a sup or two of it, especially when the virtues of it were increased by *wilde alxies* (a kind of wormwood) being infused in it, and having always found instant relief for the time, their joy can hardly be conceived, which was not abated (as they at times jocosely confessed) on account of their being able to enjoy the sweets of this delicious remedy, than of the effect it had in relieving their complaints; they likewise were happy in finding themselves able to stand this evidence of their lungs not being affected, as in consequence of their fears on that account, they would scarcely have ventured to follow my advice, had I not, on the first suspicion I had of their disorder, informed them of most of their complaints before hand, by recapitulating the symptoms usually attendant on worms. Garlick, the buds of the *wilde alxies* above-mentioned, salt, oil, ox-gall, and aloes, were, of all vermifuges, the easiest to be procured here; and were given them accordingly, along with some resin of jalap which I had brought with me; but two of VEREIRA's relations rashly attacked their complaints with garlick, both taken by itself and mixed with every thing they ate, and by this means soon voided a great number of worms, and got quit

quit of all their complaints. One of them said he had discharged a piece of a worm with legs and feet, which was grey at top, but yellow under the belly like *rups*, or caterpillars, which are changed into chrysalides, and afterwards become butterflies. He had likewise remarked the *exuvia*, or skins, of this kind of worm in his usual evacuations.

Besides the satisfaction I found in being of use, and shewing my gratitude to these hospitable rustics, by giving them my advice on this, as well as on other occasions, as well as by distributing among them some medicines which I had brought with me, and always gave away gratis in the course of my journey, I by this means got more into their good graces also, and procured assistance more readily, and more authentic information, than perhaps I could have got with money: so that the slender stock of medical knowledge of which I was possessed, proved of greater service to me than I could have supposed; not to mention the astonishment and veneration which it raised in these good people, and which often put me in mind of the proverb, *dans le pais des aveugles les borgnes sont rois*.

The reason of worms being so common a disorder in this colony, I cannot undertake to explain. It may be supposed that in many people they are hereditary, and are increased by a copious milk diet. Others, perhaps, were infested by these animals, by means of the foul and putrid water which they were generally obliged to put up with in their hunting expeditions, and in their journey to the Cape; the men, particularly, appearing to be troubled with this complaint. As to these country people, there does not appear to be much room for attributing the disorder to fish, as in the fresh water and rivers of these regions there is hardly any to be met with. When, however, these rustics get to the Cape, they commonly are careful not to want for fresh fish. The townspeople, on the other hand, who live a good deal upon fresh fish, are not proportionably so much troubled with worms; but then they have pure water to drink; milk is rather rare with them; while, on the contrary, they do not use to stint themselves in the articles of spirituous liquors and wine.

I rode out a hunting on the 5th, in company with two farmers, being chiefly in search of the *gnu*, the animal I have described at page 95 of this volume. In these parts we found large flocks of them, and shot a female *gnu* quite through the body; notwithstanding which, she ran, though tottering, to the distance of eighty or an hundred paces from us before she fell. Being mounted on fleet horses, we were able to ride past them all, and separate one of the herds from the rest, from whence we drove away a calf, which we took home with us alive. It was this which I afterwards dissected, to which I have referred in page 97, for the proof of what I there advanced. The height of this animal was two feet, and the length from the ears to the tail measured nearly as much; the tail itself was six inches long, and very hairy, with white and bristly hairs at the tip. To conclude, the predominant colour is a very pale or light brown; the belly is white, the nose black; there is a black circle around the eyes; it is likewise black about the ears, and its forehead is of a dark brown colour; the mane is black, two inches long, and rather of a bristly nature, being ornamented on each side by hairs of the same length, which cover the neck, and are twice as long as they are in other parts of the body; the beard also inclines more to grey, or is of a lighter colour than the rest of the animal's body. I had besides previously seen and previously examined another tame one of the same size, which was intended for a present to the governor: it was dreaded, however, that this, as well as the young hartbeests which they were endeavouring to tame, would be subject to a kind of furor or madness. The cry of these young gnus was sometimes *onje*, and at other times *ayond*, a good deal resembling the *nonje* of the colonists (meaning *mifs*,) and their usual contraction of the words *goeden avond*, or good evening; so that under night, the sound might easily be mistaken for the voice or salutation of a child. The roasted flesh of this *gnu*-fawn, was soft and flabby, the animal being extremely young.

On the day I have mentioned we also shot a *quagga*, which was almost wholly devoured within a few hours by birds of prey, after they had, according to their usual custom, begun with the eyes,

An animal of the height of a foot and a half was known to the farmers here, by the name of the *grey jackal*, as it approaches pretty near the common jackal in size, as well as in the shape of its body and head; but to judge from the teeth alone, as far as I can remember them at present, the *grey jackal* appears rather to bear the characteristic marks by which the *viverra*, or weasel kind is distinguished in the *System of Nature*, Edit. XII.

The hair with which the *grey jackal* was covered, was a mixture of light grey and black; so that this creature was of a darkish ash colour all over, excepting towards the tip of the tail, which, for the length of three inches, was quite black; it was besides pretty bushy, and reached down to the animal's heels. The hairs, indeed, over the whole body were pretty long and soft, but on the back they were about twice as long as in other parts, so that they seemed to form a brush or comb: for which cause, this animal may for the present be called the *viverra cristata*. I say for the present, as well on the account that the stuffed skin of this creature was stolen out of my waggon by some hounds with which we had been out a hunting, before I had time to draw up a more accurate description of it, as also because it is very difficult as yet to define the genera belonging to the order of *fera*. I made a drawing of the liver of the *grey jackal*, and on going to examine it with this view, I found it divided in a singular manner. The right lung had four lobes, and the left three. The stomach had nothing but ants in it, or, more properly speaking, the white *termes* before-mentioned; that it may not be supposed from this circumstance, that the animal here spoken of belongs to the genus of the *myrmecophaga* of LINNÆUS, it may be proper to mention here, that the character of this genus is the total want of teeth; and that, exclusively of our Swedish bears, the Hottentots themselves are also very fond of this food.

We hunted another animal this day, which was called the *uynijes jackal*, and appeared, as to shape and size, to resemble the *grey jackal* in some degree, but was of a deep brown colour. It made its escape at this time from us by a subterraneous passage. It has gained the appellation of *uynijes*, in consequence of its digging up, and feeding

feeding upon, the bulbs (*uyntjes*) and roots of flowers. The *uyntjes jackal*, besides, is thought to be more common than the grey, and is, perhaps, a kind of badger. Neither this creature nor the former were, as far as I could find, known to any body but the farmers in this neighbourhood.

The common *jackal*, or the *jackal* properly so called, nearly resembles our European fox in its form, manners, and disposition; and here, at least, is not known to assemble in packs, for the purpose of hunting. Neither is what authors have advanced concerning the hideous cry and voracity of the jackal applicable to this quadruped, these qualities being probably peculiar to the hyæna and wild dog, with which animals it has been by some means confounded. I brought home with me two skins, three feet long, with a tail somewhat more than a foot, which entirely correspond, as to hair and colour, with M. DAUBENTON'S description of the *chacal*, (BUFFON, Tom. XIII. p. 268) excepting the spots on the fore legs; and also resemble M. SCHREBER'S coloured plate of the *canis mesomelas*, or *capische schakal*, Tab. XCV. p. 370. This is also MR PENNANT'S *jackal*, Vol. I. p. 242.

A reddish yellow is the predominant colour in this animal, the legs are of a pale gold colour; it is of a whitish colour under the belly, and on the inside of the legs; the nose and ears are of a reddish cast; the head grey; the back part of the neck, together with the whole back, are covered with a large dark grey spot of the shape of a lancet, with the point towards the tail; which spot, as M. DAUBENTON has justly remarked, is composed of black and white circular lists of hair intermixed; the tail is partly grey, and partly of an umber colour, but at the tip black. I recollect to have once seen the fur of a fœtus of a *jackal*, which was of a very fine yellow colour, and instead of a blackish grey, had on its back a dark brown spot.

In the Swedish Transactions, for the year 1777, p. 147. Tab. IV. I have given a drawing of the *ratel*, so called in Africa both by the colonists and Hottentots, and at the same time described it by the appellation of the *viverra ratel*. (I have also annexed a figure of it at Plate VI. of this Volume.) By the colour, it should appear

appear to be the very species of animal which M. DE LA CAILLE saw about *Picquet-berg*, and has mentioned at page 182, by the name of the *blereau puant*; though this author did not himself observe any disagreeable odour in the animal, and I, for my part, have never heard the least mention made of it; at the same time that M. DE LA CAILLE does not say a single word concerning the singular œconomy of the animal, and moreover describes the claws as being somewhat smaller than they really are, particularly on the hind feet. Les deux trous oblongs à l'ouverture de la gueule, dans lesquels la peau rentre, according to the observation made by M. DE LA CAILLE, seem to merit a more accurate investigation and description.

In SCHREBER on the *mammalia*, p. 450, Tab. CXXV. there is a description and drawing of it under the name of the *stinkbinks*, or the *viverra Capensis*; though, in my opinion, the claws and tail in this figure are too short, and the head too thick and clumsy, and two black underneath. M. SCHREBER mentions his having heard, that this animal is fond of honey; a circumstance confirmed by the following account, which I have before inserted in the Swedish Transactions.

In this part of Africa there is a considerable number of holes and subterraneous passages to be seen, some of which are really inhabited, while others have been previously formed, but since deserted by the *hystrix cristata*, a kind of *mus jaculus*, or the *jerbua Capensis*, the *jackal*, the *mole*, the *fus Æthiopicus*, with several species of *viverra*. Just within the apertures of these cavities, and of the subterraneous passages which are blocked up in part by the ground having given way, the bees for the most part use to make their nests, especially as trees fit for their purpose are seldom to be found. The *ratel*, a sort of weasel or badger, destined by nature to be the adversary of the bees, and the unwelcome visitor of their habitations, is also endued with a particular faculty for discovering and attacking them within their entrenchments. His long claws, not only assist him in digging the dark subterraneous passages which serve him for an asylum, but are also of use to him in the occupation he is often employed in of undermining whole colonies of bees. Now, as a man stationed at the mast-head can easiest descry a
sail

fail or land at a great distance about sun-set, so, perhaps, this time of the day is the most convenient for the ratel to look out for his supper; for it is said he is also particularly attentive to his business about sun-set, when he will sit and hold one of his paws before his eyes, in order to modify the rays of the sun, so as to render them inoffensive to his organs of sight, and at the same time to have a distinct view of the object of his pursuit: and when, in consequence of peering in this manner on each side of his paw opposite to the sun, he sees any bees fly, he knows that they are at this time going strait forward to their own habitation, and of course takes care to keep in the same direction as that in which they fly, in order to find them. He has, besides, as well as the Hottentots, the Caffres, and the peasants of the Cape, the sagacity to follow a small bird, which flies on by degrees with the alluring note of *cherr, cherr, cherr*, and guides its followers to the bees' nest. This self-interested betrayer of the bees, to which I have often been obliged for the honey I have eaten in the course of my travels through the desert, is the little *cuculus indicator*, which I have described and given a drawing of in the Phil. Transf. and propose to take notice of a little farther on.

As the *ratel's* hairs are stiff and harsh, so its hide is tough, and the animal itself is hard to kill. Both the colonists and the Hottentots assert, that it is almost impossible to kill this creature, without giving it a great many violent blows on the nose; on which account they destroy it by shooting it, or plunging a knife into its body. The ratel, on account of the shortness of his legs, is not able to make his escape by flight, when pursued by the hounds; he is able, however, to extricate himself from their clutches by biting and scratching them in a most terrible manner; while, on the contrary, he is perfectly well defended from the assaults of their teeth by the toughness of the hide: for when a hound endeavours to bite him, it can lay hold only on the ratel's tough hide; which in this case instantly separates from the creature's body or flesh, as it is said to lie loose from the skin, as though it were within a sack; so that when any body lays hold of him by the hind part of his neck, and that even pretty near his head, he can turn round,

as it were, in his skin, and bite the arm of the person that seizes him. It is a remarkable circumstance, that such a number of hounds, as collectively are able to tear a lion of a moderate size in pieces, are said at times to be forced to leave the ratel only dead to appearance. This report appears to be confirmed by the circumstance of M. DE LA CAILLE's *blereau puant's* still being alive, after the hounds had dragged it away to the waggon. Thus far, however, is certain, that on the fur of the ratel I have brought home with me, there is scarcely the mark of a bite to be seen, though it had been attacked and worried by a number of hounds. Is it not probable, that nature, which has appointed the ratel for the destruction of bees, may have given it a hide so much tougher than those she has bestowed on other animals of the viverra kind, for the sole purpose of defending it from the stings of these insects? Or indeed, may not this animal's food, which consists of honey and wax, render it so tough and hard to kill?

Those bees nests which are built up on trees, run no danger whatever from the ratel. In the first transports of his anger at having sought for these bees in vain, he commonly gnaws or bites the trunk of these trees; and these bites are certain signs for the Hottentots, that a bee's nest is to be found up in that tree. I should for my own part have entertained many doubts as to all these properties attributed to the ratel, had I not procured various accounts of this curious animal, entirely agreeing with one another, from many experienced farmers and Hottentots residing in different parts of the country.

As I was not lucky enough to catch a ratel myself, and must content myself with giving such a description of it in this place, as I have been able to digest from this animal's skin.

There are six fore teeth in each jaw, in general of the same size, flat at the edges, probably owing to their being worn away; likewise two *canine teeth* in each jaw, very strong and large compared with the size of the animal, but obtuse, (probably also the consequence of their being worn away;) the *grinders*, which are six in number, had, like the others, a yellowish colour, perhaps owing to the animal's feeding upon honey. The papil-
le

the *tongue* were sharp-pointed and turned backward, like those of cats.

Its *legs* are short, with five toes on each of the fore feet, armed with projecting claws an inch and a half in length, but those of the hind feet are not more than half that length. These claws have a sharp edge, which is double half way up the fore part of it, or rather excavated with a deep furrow; a circumstance which apparently greatly assists the creature in digging. There is nothing like ear-laps observable on this animal, excepting a trifling border round about a rather large aperture, in which the organ of hearing is placed.

The forehead, crown of the head, nape of the neck, shoulders, back, and tail are ash coloured; the nose, around the eyes, and on the cheek-bone, the ears, the lower part of the neck, the breast, belly, thighs, and legs, are of a blackish hue inclining to brown; as are also the extreme limits of the ash-coloured part just mentioned, which are besides separated from the black colour by means of a light grey list of an inch broad, running from the ear quite back to the tail.

The dimensions were as follows: From the tip of the nose to the tail forty inches; the tail twelve inches long; that of the claws, taken together with the whole phalanx, or all the toes of the fore feet, one inch and three quarters; those of the hind feet about one inch.

I had only a hasty glimpse of other two small animals in this colony, which probably belong also to the *viverra* genus. That which we saw and gave chase to between the two Fish rivers, escaped from us, however, by running into a hole below ground, and appeared to be somewhat less than a cat, though longer in proportion. Its colour was a bright red. Of the other sort I saw two at one time in the neighbourhood of *Niez-bout-kloof*, when they immediately ran out of my sight, and hid themselves in a bush. They seemed to be of a coal-black colour and more than a foot high; yet I am not positive, whether they were not *uyntjes jackals*, the animal I have already mentioned at page 130 of this Volume. Besides, the former of these, I mean the light, or rose-coloured animal, might be, for any thing I know, the *zerda*, or *vulpes minimus Sarensis* of M. SKIOLDEBRAND, the Swedish

consul at Algiers, (vid. *Swedish Transactions* for 1777, page 265) as I could not during the chase, attend to its ears so minutely as I could have wished; and as I had likewise been told, that there was a very small animal, with long ears, which lived under ground, and was frequently seen on the plains in *Camdebo*, but was difficult to catch, especially as it never went far from its hole. In this respect likewise, it agrees with the description of the *zerda* quoted before; but this again seems inconsistent with the account given of it by Mr BRUCE, who says it lives in palm-trees, (the fruit of which is its food) in *Libya*, to the south of the *Palus Tritonidis*. (Vide BURFON's *Animal Anonyme*, Supplement, Tom. III. page 148, Tab. XIX.) It is not impossible, indeed, that this animal is to be found in *Libya*; but I have been told by M. SKIOLDEBRAND, that Mr BRUCE had formerly seen this animal in *Algiers* (where both these gentlemen were consuls at the same time) and had engaged the same painter as M. SKIOLDEBRAND did, to make a drawing of it; and hence it is, that on comparing the two figures, viz. of the animal from *Libya*, and of that from *Algiers*, it evidently appears, that either the one is copied from the other, or else both from one and the same original.

Many of the friends of M. SKIOLDEBRAND, and among the rest M. NICANDER, one of the secretaries of the Royal Academy of Sciences in Sweden, have seen a figure of the *zerda* drawn in its natural size and colour, many years since, in M. SKIOLDEBRAND's superb collection; but could not persuade this gentleman to ornament the *Swedish Transactions* with it before, as, the animal having unluckily escaped from him, before he could examine its teeth, and other particulars, he had waited a long time in vain, in expectation of procuring some better information from *Algiers* as to these points. M. SKIOLDEBRAND could not find any traces of a perforation at the bottom of this creature's large and beautiful ears, which were of a rosy hue; indeed, these perforations would easily be filled up, and would in consequence become very inconvenient to an animal like this, which is obliged to burrow and live under the sand. He concludes that providence has supplied this defect, by some membrane not lodged very deep in the ear. Mr PENNANT follows

follows M. SKIOLDEBRAND in the account he gives of this animal in Vol. I. p. 248, at the same time referring it to the genus of the *dog*.

The *bee cuckow*, (*cuculus indicator*) which I have mentioned above, in describing the *ratel* at p. 133, deserves more particular notice in this place. It has, however, nothing remarkable in it as to its size and colour, as, on a transient view, it appears in these respects to be the same with the common sparrow; except indeed, that it is rather larger, and somewhat lighter coloured, with a little yellow spot on every shoulder, and the feathers of its tail dashed with white.

It is, indeed, solely with a view to its own interest, that this *cuckow* discovers the bees-nests to man and the *ratel* race, as it is exceedingly fond of honey and bees-eggs; and it is aware that when a bees-nest is plundered, some of it is shed, which consequently falls to its share, or else some part is left by the plunderers as a recompence for its services. However, the method in which this bird communicates to others the discovery it has made, is not more remarkable than well adapted to the purpose.

It is probable that the morning and evening are its principal meal times; at least it is at these periods it shews the greatest inclination to come forth, and with the grating cry of *cherr, cherr, cherr*, to draw the attention, as it were, of the *ratel*, as well as of the *Hot-tentots* and *colonists*. Some person then commonly repairs to the place whence the sound proceeds, when the bird, all the while constantly repeating its cry of *cherr, cherr*, flies on slowly and by degrees towards the quarter where the swarm of bees have taken up their abode. The persons thus invited accordingly follow, taking great care at same time not to frighten away their guide with any uncommon noise, or by means of a large company, but rather, as I have seen practised by one of the most intelligent of my *Bosbies-men*, to answer it now and then with a soft and very gentle whistle, by way of informing the bird that its call is attended to. I have remarked, that when the bees-nest was at a considerable distance, the bird generally made long stages, or flights, waiting for its sporting companion between each flight, and inviting him again to come on; but flew to shorter distances,

distances, and repeated its cry oftener, and with greater earnestness, in proportion as they approached nearer to the bees-nest. I likewise observed, with astonishment, what others had previously assured me of, *viz.* that when this bird has, in consequence of its great impatience, got too far before its followers, especially when, by reason of the roughness or unevenness of the ground, they have not been able to keep pace with it, it has flown back to meet them, and with increasing cries, denoting still greater impatience, has upbraided them for being so tedious. At length, when it has reached the bees-nest, whether it is built in the cleft of a rock, in a hollow tree, or in some hole in the ground, it hovers over the spot for the space of a few seconds, a circumstance which I myself have been eye-witness to twice; after which it sits in silence, and commonly concealed in some adjacent tree or bush, waiting the event, and with a view of coming in for its share of the booty. It is not improbable, that this bird always hovers, more or less, in the manner just described, over the bees-nest, before it conceals itself, though people do not always attend to this circumstance: in any case, however, one may be assured that the bees-nest is very near, when, after the bird has taken a person to some distance, it is on a sudden silent. In a place where we stopped two days, my Hottentots were led by a bee-cuckow, which was rather shy and obscure in its expressions, backwards and forwards several times to one and the same spot, till one of them, who paid more attention to the bird than the rest, thought of looking out there for the nest itself.

By means of the bird's directions, having found and plundered the bees-nest, they commonly, as an acknowledgment, leave it a considerable portion of the worst part, which is that part of the comb in which the young bees are hatching; and which, however, is probably the most delicate morsel to the bird; and indeed, is by no means considered as the worst, even by the Hottentots. I was told by my Boshies-men, as well as by the colonists, that a man who makes it his constant employment to follow the bees, should not be too grateful and generous to this officious bird at first, but leave for it only just as much as will serve to stimulate its appetite; by which means it will be led,

led, in the expectation of obtaining a more liberal reward, to discover another swarm of bees, if there be any in the neighbourhood. Though there are plenty of wild bees about Cape Town, yet both the bird itself and the peculiar property it has of discovering honey to others, were entirely unknown there; nor could I, when I first heard it mentioned at *Groot-Vaders-bosch*, consider it in any other light than that of a fable; the rather as at the same time I saw a lad who was following one of these birds, fail in the object of his pursuit. In this case, however, there was great cause to lay the blame on the closeness and compactness of the wood, and the uncommon shyness of the bird. My Hottentots from *Buffeljaagts-rivier* and *Zwellendam* have since assured me, that they had also been acquainted with this bird at the place just mentioned, where they were born, but confessed at the same time, that it was there scarce as well as shy; nor did it conduct them to the honey so readily and distinctly as in the district where we then were in the desert, and near the river *t'Kau-t'kai*, or *Great Visch-rivier*.

By comparing this last remark with my account of the *ovulus indicator*, or honey-guide, inserted in the *Philosophical Transactions*, Vol. LXVII. page 38 and 43, it will be evident that a geographical error has been inserted there, probably owing to their being obliged to alter this passage, as my account was written in English, so as to make it approach nearer to the idiom of the English language.

Though I had frequently seen this bird in the desert, and once at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, which, on account of the uncommon property with which it is endued, is called by the colonists *honing-wyzer*, or the honey-guide, and, indeed, had frequently reaped the fruits of its services, yet I had not an opportunity of shooting it till I was on the road home, when I one day pursued it, the little creature all the while flying before me with its cheering note of *cherr, cherr*. This, however, not a little offended my Boshies-men: and though I had promised an ample reward before, consisting of glass beads and tobacco, to my *Zwellendam* Hottentots, on condition that they would assist me in catching and shooting a *honing-wyzer*, yet I found them too much the bird's friends

to

to betray it; a circumstance which gave me great pleasure, as it shewed that these people were in general possessed of good and grateful hearts; though ingratitude, I am very sorry to say it, is a crime, by no means uncommon to be met with among them.

During my residence in the interior part of Africa, a bird's-nest was pointed out to me, which several farmers assured me was that of the bee-cuckow. It was like the nests of certain finches, which are found in those parts, and was formed of fine shreds of bark, interwoven and plaited together, in the shape of a bottle. The neck or opening of it hung downwards, and a plaited cord, made of the same sort of bark as the nest, hung in a swing, as it were, cross-wise below the aperture fastened by both ends to the brim of the same opening, and was certainly intended for the bird to rest itself and swing upon.

The following description of this bird was made from the two which I shot, and which we imagined to be hens; for the neck of the cock is said to be (*capistrum*) encircled with a black ring.

Rostrum crassiusculum, versus basin fustum, apice luteum. Angulus oris usque infra oculos extensus. Nares postrema ad basin Rostri, supremæ vicinæ, ut carinula dorsali saltem separarentur, oblongæ, margine prominulo. Pili aliquot ad basin Rostri, præcipue in mandibula inferiore; Lingua plana subsagittata. Oculorum Irides ferrugineo-griseæ; Palpebræ nudæ, nigrae. Pedes nigri scanforii; Tibiæ breves, Ungues tennes, nigri. Pileus late griseus e pennis brevibus latiusculis. Gula, Jugulum, Pectus, sordide alba, cum aliquo virore vix notabili in pectore. Dorsum & Uropygium ferrugineo-grisea. Abdomen Crissumque alba. Femora testæ pennis albis, macula longitudinali nigra notatis. Alarum Teñtrices Superiores, omnes griseo-fusca exceptis summis aliquot, quæ flavis apicibus formant maculam flavam in humeris exiguam & a plumis scapularibus sæpe testam. Teñtrices infra alam albide, harum supremæ ex albido nigroque maculatæ. Remiges Primarii 8, R. Secundarii 6, R. Omnes supra fusci, subtus cinereo fusci. Alulæ griseo-fusca; Cauda cuneiformis, rectricibus 12: harum due intermedia longiores angustiores, supra & infra æruginoso-fusca; proximæ due fuliginosa, margine interiore albicantes; Due utrinque his proximæ alba apice fusca, & exterius ad basin macula nigra notata: extima

extrema utrinque reliquis brevior, alba apice fusca, macula nigra vix ulla ad basin. Alæ complicate caudæ partem quartam attingunt. Longitudo ab apice Rostris, ad extremam caudæ circiter septem uncias pedis Anglicani explet. Rostrum a basi superiore ad apicem semiunciale.

Since my description of the *cuculus indicator* was inserted in the *Phil. Transf.* I have seen the following account of it in LOBO's Travels to Abyssinia, published by LE GRAND in 1728, (a book to which I was referred by M. B. BERGIUS, one of the directors of the bank,) and a gentleman of extensive reading, which deserves to be quoted here verbatim.

"The *moroc*, or honey-bird, is endued with a peculiar instinct, or faculty of discovering honey. They have here multitudes of various kinds, some are tame like ours, and form their combs in hives: of the wild ones some place their honey in hollow trees, others hide it in holes in the ground, which they keep extremely clean, and at the same time cover so carefully, that though they are commonly in the highway, they are seldom found, unless by the *moroc*'s assistance. The honey thus prepared under ground, is to the full as good as that which is made in hives: I have only found it a little blacker; and cannot help imagining it to be the same, with that which St JOHN lived on in the wilderness. When the *moroc* has discovered any honey, he repairs immediately to the road-side, and when he sees a traveller, sings and claps his wings, making many motions to invite him to follow him; and when he perceives his coming, flies before him from tree to tree, till he comes to the place where the bees have stored their treasure, and then begins to sing melodiously. The Abyssinian takes the honey, without failing to leave part of it for the bird, to reward him for his information."

There is good ground to suppose from this passage, that the *moroc* of Abyssinia and the *bee-cuckoo*, which I have before-described, are one and the same bird; but if this is the case, it should appear, that Father LOBO himself had not been an eye-witness of this singular kind of chase, or else that he has not given an accurate description of it. Neither, indeed, have I ever found the honey which has been made under-ground, blacker than that which comes out of the hives; but on the other hand,

hand, full as good as any other honey whatever, that in the desert particularly having a finer flavour than any I ever tasted. Though as delicacies did not much abound here, and I was obliged to live principally on animal food, I cannot place much dependence upon the niceness of my taste at that time. My Hottentots, and even two of the colonists, ate likewise the young bees and the honey-comb itself, or the nest, esteeming it the most delicate part of the whole. The honey here was fine and mellow, and appeared to be tolerably free from wax, without having undergone any purification whatever.—I neither saw nor heard of any one in Africa that kept tame bees, excepting in the country about Constantia, where a young lad, the son of a colonist, sometimes used to set out empty chests and boxes, into which a wild swarm would enter without fail in a few days and settle: but the hive was generally taken almost immediately by this greedy *amateur*, and part of it was also stolen by liquorish slaves, among whom those who were natives of Madagascar had a particular knack at finding wild bees and honey. As in the tracts of country last-mentioned, besides other flowers, there grow in particular many different sorts of heaths, the culture of bees might in these places be carried to a very great degree of perfection. I found the wild honey of an inferior quality near the Cape. Whether this proceeded from the great abundance of the different sorts of heath in the above-mentioned districts, or from my being more fastidious and nice when I was at the latter place, I cannot determine.

The *jerbua Capensis*, which I enumerated at page 132 among the animals in the ruins of whose subterraneous dwellings the bees, in default of trees fit for their purpose, build their nests, is described by Dr J. R. FORSTER in the Swedish Transactions for 1778, page 108, with some of my remarks annexed, l. c. page 119. On this head, likewise, the reader may consult the compilation above referred to, called *Nouv. Descript. &c.* together with M. PALLAS *de Murium Genere*, page 87, in which book it was afterwards referred to under the denomination of the *mus Casser*. It is called by the colonists *berg-baas*, or *spring-baas*, (the mountain or skipping hare) and subsists upon roots and other vegetables, its
chief

chief haunts being in the neighbourhood of *Stellenbosch* and *Camdeboo*. It is almost of the size and colour with a common hare, but its hinder legs, by means of which it is said to be enabled to take a leap twenty feet in length, are much longer and slenderer; the fore legs, on the other hand, are exceedingly short, the animal seldom supporting himself upon them, being commonly in a sitting posture, and making use of them as hands to carry the food to its mouth. It can likewise, with great expedition, by means of its fore paws, with the assistance of its long projecting teeth, dig holes for itself and passages below ground; though it by no means experiences the greatest degree of security in this asylum, on account of the dykes and cuts which the colonists make to their corn fields and plantations, which likewise find their way into these subterraneous passages; so that the *jerbuas*, which are thus in danger of being drowned in their own habitations, are forced to evacuate them with the greatest precipitation, in consequence of which they are often pursued and taken.

Where the inhabitants of this district have an opportunity (in consequence, for example, of there being a mountain in the neighbourhood) of making the dykes and sluices here alluded to, they never omit by their means to drown the moles also, as they are called, which infest this colony, and which are, indeed, a kind of rat with short tails. The one kind is less than the other, but is most generally to be met with round about the *Cape*; and from the white spots on its head is called *bleefmol*, and is the *mus Capensis* of Messrs PENNANT, SCHREBER, and PALLAS, and the long-toothed *marmot* of Mr BROWN, page 112, Plate XLVI. which plate gives a coloured representation of this animal; but the figure, which is the same with that in the compilation we have frequently referred to, as well as with that in BUFFON's Supplement, Tom III. is not remarkably good.

The other species, which is named the *sand-mol*, is the *mus Africanus* of Mr PENNANT. This is shaped in every part like the former, but is not spotted, of a lighter hue, and, indeed, of a mouse colour, its tail being in proportion equally short with that of the other, but flattened both at top and underneath, though furnished with hairs standing

standing out in the same manner. It has a great resemblance to the figure of the *mus talpinus* in PALLAS and SCHREBER, but differs from that animal as it has a compressed tail, as I have just before observed; likewise as to its body, which I found measured a foot at the highest, though even then it was twice or thrice as big as the *mus Capensis*, or the *mus talpinus*. These two different species, the *mus Caffer* and the *mus Capensis*, are very troublesome vermin, especially in orchards and vineyards; and are caught with snares, which fall upon them at the opening of their holes, and are likewise often killed with pistols, by which they are shot through the body, on their touching a thread tied to the trigger in the slightest manner. The *mus Caffer* is particularly unwieldy and clumsy in its shape, and is consequently slow in running, making its escape with difficulty when it is found near its nest; though, on the other hand, when it is laid hold on, it throws the anterior part of its body about to the right and left with great activity and alertness, in order to fasten upon its enemy with its teeth. In this particular I have, as well as many of the colonists, discovered a great similarity between the rhinoceros and the sand-mole; indeed, it seems to proceed from the smallness of the eyes and obscurity of vision in both these animals.

The *talpa Asiatica*, LINN. the *talpa Siberica* of PENNANT, SEBA, and KLEIN; the *talpa carea* of BRISSON, PALLAS, and SCHREBER; and the *variable mole* of BROWN, are one and the same animal, and comes from the *Cape*; and which has not only been erroneously attributed to Siberia, but also, on account of the number and shape of its teeth, being unknown, has hitherto been improperly referred to the *mole* genus; though, in fact, it belongs to that of the *shrew* or *forex*, as plainly appears from the following description of the teeth, which I made from a specimen I brought home from the *Cape*, preserved in spirits. *Dentes superiores anteriores* 2 cuneati, approximati. *D. inferiores anteriores* 4 subulati, horum intermediis brevioribus. *D. laterales* in utraque maxilla utrinque 7, horum duobus seu tribus prioribus simpliciusculis, acutis, interioribus seu poster. duobus seu tribus furcatis, cuspidate extimo majore. This animal may therefore for the future be styled *Sorex aureus*, *cauda nulla*, *rostre nudo brevi*, *palmis*

mis subtetradactylis, plantis pentadactylis. I say *sub-tetradactylis*, as this creature has, on the outside of its three crooked claws which stand behind each other, a very small spur, or shorter kind of claw projecting, which the naturalists before-mentioned did not observe, and which might easily induce them very properly to augment the catalogue of the animal creation with one animal more than really exists in it.

This creature is five or six inches long, its snout is short and without any hair upon it, notwithstanding which the upper lip is hairy. The colour, which in other respects is extremely beautiful, is continually varying, as SCHREBER has remarked, page 563, between green, brown, and gold. In PETER BROWN's *Illustrations of Zoology*, page 110, Plate XLV. there is a tolerable coloured drawing of this animal; the golden cast, however, is not expressed with a sufficient degree of accuracy and beauty; neither is the least notice taken of the fourth small or external claw.

To the query which M. PALLAS (*de Murium Genere*) proposes at page 154, in the notes, I answer, that this creature, in fact, has eyes, but they are so small that they were difficult to be observed in the animal just after it was shot; and in the specimen I have preserved in spirits, could not be seen at all till I had stripped the skin from off the head. They are placed in the centre of a strait line, which may be conceived to be drawn from the nostrils to the ears. Again, these latter are in the same horizontal line with the fauces, the apertures of them being pretty wide externally, but internally almost imperceptible. This creature has no laps to its ears.

As I have now entered upon the subject of animals, this, perhaps, will be the properest place for enumerating, and giving a farther description of all the African *gazels* together, especially as by following the order of my Journal in this particular, I should be in hazard of making frequent repetitions.

The *barbisset*, which I have frequently mentioned in the course of this work, (viz. 91, 92, 193, 247, Vol. I. and page 3, 9, 10, 13, 14, Vol. II.) is the most general of it, the larger *gazels* which are to be found at *Agter Brantjes-boogte*, or indeed in the whole colony, and, very

probably in any part of Africa. These animals generally keep together in herds of different numbers, tho' indeed they are frequently seen straggling about in a solitary state. I have often had opportunity to hunt and kill them; and made the annexed drawing in Plate I. of this Volume, from one that I had just shot. Without any intention in the least of depreciating the labours of others, I find myself obliged to refer my readers to this, as being the only drawing hitherto published, which exhibits the least likeness of this animal.

Its greatest height, which is from the fore feet to the withers, is somewhat above four feet. The horns, (which are common to male and female,) measured along the exterior binding, are from six to nine inches in length, and of a black colour all over, being of the same nature in common as those of the gazel kind. The colonists make very genteel spoons of them, though the gnu's horns are thought to have the finest grain, as well as the blackest colour, and also to receive the finest polish. As to other particulars, the horns of this animal grow from a small protuberance of the cranium, with their bases almost quite close together, separating as they go upwards continually more and more from one another, as far as to one-third of their whole length; when proceeding farther on to two-thirds of their length, they incline a little inwards or towards each other, at the same time bending backwards; so that the uppermost or last division, which is even and smooth, goes backwards very nearly in a horizontal direction, yet so as the tips turn a little downwards. These horns from their bases upwards, as far as to two-thirds of their length, are embossed in the manner of rings, which are about eighteen in number, and near the bases of the horns do not run more than half a line or a line above the surface beneath; or higher up, or near and upon the curvatures of the horns, these rings are not only much larger, viz. from a quarter to half an inch, but likewise appear to be more irregular, some of them forming knobs, while others take a spiral turn. All these rings or elevations are smooth in other respects, but there are a number of longitudinal furrows between them.

The

The principal colour in the hartbeest is cinnamon colour, but the forehead is covered with black hairs, which lie in a whirl, with a small mixture of brown ones. Two inches below this an oblong black spot commences, which extends quite down to the nostrils; the lower lip also, and the fore part of the shoulders are covered with black hairs, as are also the anterior part of the fore-legs quite down to the hoofs, these black hairs being at the same time carried round them, and rising behind up to the fetlock-joints. This black colour is dispersed nearly in the same manner on the fore parts of the hind-legs, and between the fetlock-joints and the hoofs behind. A considerable part of the hindmost side of the haunch is covered with a wide black streak, which reaches down to the knee, as may be seen in the annexed figure. There are two narrow stripes, which rise one behind each ear, and afterwards run together all along the ridge of the neck. From hence a dark brown oval spot extends over the whole ridge of the back, ending with its broader and obtuser end just above the tail, which is slender, and, at the first sight, has the appearance of an ass's tail. The hairs of this rise high up, are black, and nearly of the nature of bristles, and rather pointing outwards than hanging down; the outermost, which are the longest, being scarcely six inches in length. The upper and hinder parts of the haunches are of a pale yellow colour, as well as the anterior and upper edge of them, the inside of them, and the belly. The back parts of the fore-legs are also of a colour somewhat lighter than the cinnamon colour above-mentioned, with which every other part of the animal is covered.

There is a pore one line in diameter, from an inch to an inch and a half below and before the internal angle of the eye. From this pore, which is the opening of a caruncle that lies below, there is secreted a matter very similar to ear-wax, which I remarked that my Hottentots kept in a piece of skin, as a scarce and excellent medicine; on the dried skin of the animal, this pore is scarcely to be observed. This, perhaps, is the cause, that so great and accurate a Zoologist as M. PALLAS takes no notice of this pore, as he made his descriptions principally from the dried skins of the animal; and as to the

live hartbeest which he saw, he could not easily come at it, so as to observe its pore. The remains of a beard or whiskers, which M. PALLAS mentions as being on both sides of the black spot on the under lip, may also be seen on the skin of the hartbeest which I brought home with me. This animal is described by M. PALLAS, in Fasc. I. p. 12, No XVI. and Fasc. XII. No XIII. p. 16, of his *Spicilegia Zoologica*, under the name of the *antelope bubalis*; but in the *Systema Natura*, it has been taken notice of before by that of *capra dorcas*: wherefore I incline to keep this specific name, for the sake of avoiding confusion; at the same time in conformity to the well-founded opinion of M. PALLAS, referring the *dorcas* to the *antelope* or *gazel* genus. The *bubalis* of the antients was in all probability the same animal with our hartbeest, and so is the *vache de Barbarie*, described in the *Mém. pour servir à l'Hist. des Animaux*, Part II. p. 24. The figure given there, Tab. XXXIX. is, indeed, not a perfect likeness of the *antelope dorcas*; but being very indifferent also in other respects, may, with some degree of probability, be supposed to represent this animal. The description, however, given of it in the following passage, l. c. does not answer quite so well with the hartbeest's hair, viz. *Poil roux, plus pale vers la poitrine, que vers la racine, presque de meme grosseur vers le point que vers la racine*. It appears to be merely this passage which has led M. BUFFON, Tom. XII. p. 296, under the article *bubal*, to confound the hartbeest with the animal which KOLAS called the elk; though he at the same time evidently gives a different description of the latter, viz. as being of an ash-colour, &c. &c.

The hair of the hartbeest is remarkably fine, and about an inch in length, and in other respects resembling that of harts and gazels. The ears are covered on the inside with white hair. This animal has no teeth, but in the lower jaw, which are eight in number. Those in the middle are the broadest, and indeed they are broader at the top than they are near the root; thus in number, as well as other respects, entirely corresponding with the teeth of the *gnu*. The legs are rather slender, with small fetlocks and hoofs. M. PENNANT, in his *Synopsis of Quadrupeds*, p. 37, and in his *History of Quadrupeds*, p. 90, denominates

nates this beast the *cervine antelope*; and imagines that M. FORSKAL, by the *baker uafch* of the Arabians, which he ranks among the animals of a genus hitherto undetermined, has this animal in view. Mr HOUTTUYN also, by the description and wretched drawing he has given us in Vol. III. p. 213, Plate XXIV. in all probability means the *hartbeest*. It may easily be seen that this figure has some affinity with the *temamacama* of SEBA, Vol. I. Tab. XLIII. which is also with great propriety referred to by M. PALLAS for the *hartbeest*; but I now find that Mr PENNANT considers this to be his Senegal antelope: the description, however, does not appear to correspond so well with the figure of *Seba* there referred to, as with M. DE BUFFON's of the *thoba*, Tab. XXXII. fig. 2, to which he refers also. The cranium and skeleton of which the representation is given by M. DE BUFFON in Vol. XII. Tab. XXXVII. and XXXVIII. under the denomination of those of the *bubal*, belong to the *hartbeest*; and from hence it is evident, that the horns of this animal are apt to vary. Hence, may not Mr PENNANT's Senegal and cervine antelopes be, in reality one and the same animal? Indeed, though I have seen the horns of the *hartbeest* very different from each other in their external surface, yet it appeared to me that their position was the same in the very considerable number of them, which I have seen in Africa. The head of the annexed figure, is rather too small in proportion to the body; a mistake which occurred, in reducing the drawing from a larger to a lesser size*.

The large head and high fore-head, together with the ass-like ears and tail of the *hartbeest*, render it by no means the most handsome of the whole tribe of antelopes. Its pace, when at full speed, appears like a heavy gallop; notwithstanding which, it runs as quickly as any of the other large antelopes. When it has in any degree got ahead of its pursuers, it is more ready than almost any other gazel to turn round frequently while flying, and, making a stand, stare them directly in the face. I have already mentioned, at page 97 of this Volume, that it falls on its knees, like the *gnu*, when it goes to butt any one. Its flesh is of a fine grain, and

N 3

rather

* This fault is remedied in the present edition.

live hartbeest which he saw, he could not easily come at it, so as to observe its pore. The remains of a beard or whiskers, which M. PALLAS mentions as being on both sides of the black spot on the under lip, may also be seen on the skin of the hartbeest which I brought home with me. This animal is described by M. PALLAS, in Fasc. I. p. 12, No XVI. and Fasc. XII. No XIII. p. 16, of his *Spicilegia Zoologica*, under the name of the *antelope bubalis*; but in the *Système Naturel*, it has been taken notice of before by that of *capra dorcas*: wherefore I incline to keep this specific name, for the sake of avoiding confusion; at the same time in conformity to the well-founded opinion of M. PALLAS, referring the *dorcas* to the *antelope* or *gazel* genus. The *bubalis* of the antients was in all probability the same animal with our hartbeest, and so is the *vache de Barbarie*, described in the *Mém. pour servir à l'Hist. des Animaux*, Part II. p. 24. The figure given there, Tab. XXXIX. is, indeed, not a perfect likeness of the *antelope dorcas*; but being very indifferent also in other respects, may, with some degree of probability, be supposed to represent this animal. The description, however, given of it in the following passage, l. c. does not answer quite so well with the hartbeest's hair, viz. *Poil roux, plus pâle vers la poitrine, que vers la racine, presque de même grosseur vers le point que vers la racine.* It appears to be merely this passage which has led M. BUFFON, Tom. XII. p. 296, under the article *bubal*, to confound the hartbeest with the animal which KOLBE called the elk; though he at the same time evidently gives a different description of the latter, viz. as being of an ash-colour, &c. &c.

The hair of the hartbeest is remarkably fine, and about an inch in length, and in other respects resembling that of harts and gazels. The ears are covered on the inside with white hair. This animal has no teeth, but in the lower jaw, which are eight in number. Those in the middle are the broadest, and indeed they are broader at the top than they are near the root; thus in number, as well as other respects, entirely corresponding with the teeth of the *gnu*. The legs are rather slender, with small fetlocks and hoofs. M. PENNANT, in his *Synopsis of Quadrupeds*, p. 37, and in his *History of Quadrupeds*, p. 90, denominates

nates this beast the *cervine antelope*; and imagines that M. FORSKAL, by the *baker uafch* of the Arabians, which he ranks among the animals of a genus hitherto undetermined, has this animal in view. Mr HOUTTUYN also, by the description and wretched drawing he has given us in Vol. III. p. 213, Plate XXIV. in all probability means the *haribeeft*. It may easily be seen that this figure has some affinity with the *temamacama* of SEBA, Vol. I. Tab. XLIII. which is also with great propriety referred to by M. PALLAS for the hartbeest; but I now find that Mr PENNANT considers this to be his Senegal antelope: the description, however, does not appear to correspond so well with the figure of *Seba* there referred to, as with M. DE BUFFON's of the *thoba*, Tab. XXXII. fig. 2, to which he refers also. The cranium and skeleton of which the representation is given by M. DE BUFFON in Vol. XII. Tab. XXXVII. and XXXVIII. under the denomination of those of the *bubal*, belong to the hartbeest; and from hence it is evident, that the horns of this animal are apt to vary. Hence, may not Mr PENNANT's Senegal and cervine antelopes be, in reality one and the same animal? Indeed, though I have seen the horns of the hartbeest very different from each other in their external surface, yet it appeared to me that their position was the same in the very considerable number of them, which I have seen in Africa. The head of the annexed figure, is rather too small in proportion to the body; a mistake which occurred, in reducing the drawing from a larger to a lesser size*.

The large head and high fore-head, together with the afs-like ears and tail of the hartbeest, render it by no means the most handsome of the whole tribe of antelopes. Its pace, when at full speed, appears like a heavy gallop; notwithstanding which, it runs as quickly as any of the other large antelopes. When it has in any degree got ahead of its pursuers, it is more ready than almost any other gazel to turn round frequently while flying, and, making a stand, stare them directly in the face. I have already mentioned, at page 97 of this Volume, that it falls on its knees, like the *gnu*, when it goes to butt any one. Its flesh is of a fine grain, and

N 3

rather

* This fault is remedied in the present edition.

rather dry, but notwithstanding of a rather agreeable high flavour. It is at any rate not so coarse and dry as that of the *bonte-bok*. M. DE BUFFON, who at page 298, seems anxious to separate the hartbeest from the gazel, goat, and all other genera, will, perhaps, now be led, by what has been immediately mentioned, to admit that it ought rather to be referred to the gazel or antelope kind.

Eland, or *Kaapse Eland*, (the *Cape elk*, or more properly the *elk-antelope*) vide Plate I. of this Volume, is a name which the colonists give to a species of gazel which is somewhat larger and clumsier, though, upon the whole, handsomer than the *hartbeest*. I have already had occasion in Vol. I. page 91, and Vol. II. page 51, 70, 85, 94, to take notice of this animal, and have given a description and drawing of it in the Swedish Transactions for 1779. In one of the places above referred to, I have mentioned, that the Caffres call it *empofas*; I have since found in my manuscript notes, that it is also called *posso* by the same nation, and *i'gann* by the Hottentots. There has not been hitherto given any satisfactory description or drawing of this scarce animal, as before this it had never been seen by any naturalist.

Mr PENNANT, in the new edition of his excellent History of Quadrupeds, Vol. I. page 76, has perfectly well comprehended my meaning in the Swedish Transactions; but, as well as M. PALLAS, in his *Spicil. Zool. Fascic. XII.* p. 11. has been led by KOLBE into the error of fixing the habitation of the Cape elk in mountainous tracts; (vide Fasc. I. Plate XVI.) an error, which has occasioned that great Zoologist, M. PALLAS, who had before in Fasc. I. l. c. taken notice of this animal by the name of *oryx*, to change it for that of *orcas*, (vide Fasc. XII. page 5, 11, 17,) and afterwards to give the name of *oryx* to another animal; a circumstance which it is to be wished could have been avoided, on account of the confusion in which the multitude of names, and more especially the alterations of them, must consequently involve the science of natural history. After all, however, the fact is this, that the elk-antelope, like the other large species of the gazel kind, lives on the plains and in valleys, instead of the high mountains, whither KOLBE has sent

sent it, and up which this animal in particular would in all probability be too heavy and unwieldy to climb. The Comte de Buffon, Tom. XII. Tab. XLVI. p. 578, has delineated the horns extremely well, but has very improperly ascribed them to the *condou* (*Belgis laedoe*) which is a different animal altogether, and of which we shall say more afterwards.

The figure annexed at Plate I. of this Volume, I had an opportunity, in my journey homewards, of drawing from a live elk-antelope, which had been caught while it was yet a fawn; but though it was not fully grown up, and though it was permitted to go loose day and night without the least restraint or confinement, yet it never went away, but kept very near to mankind, and about the farm: whence it should appear, that this species of gazel would easily be domesticated, which, in its tame state, might be more serviceable than either horses or oxen, and, in a great degree, perform the offices for which both these animals are used: especially as this beast is said to keep up its flesh without taking much food, generally contenting itself with shrubs and bushes, which the land is more inclined to produce than grass. It seemed to me, that the hair of the fore-lock and on the forehead was longer in this than in the three old ones which I saw shot; on the other hand, this had not the small elevation, or knob, which the others, and particularly one of them, had between and behind their horns.

The beast is of an ash-colour, inclining a little towards blue, excepting the following parts, which are quite black, viz. the tuft at the end of the tail, the skin between the fetlocks and the hoofs, and the thin erect mane, which extends from the nape of the animal's neck along the spine of its back.

This creature's horns, when it is full grown, are two feet long, and of a dark brown colour, being twisted, or forming half way up from the base a very conspicuous wreath, in which they have three sides and three ridges or ribs, separated from each other by the sides; the horns afterwards become round and straight, excepting that the tips of them are gradually turned a little forwards and inwards. The hindmost ridge near the base becomes, in the middle of the writhen part of the horn, the

the middlemost ridge, and the most raised; but at its termination again becoming the hindmost, gradually decreases, and vanishes at the back of the upper half of the horn. The interior and anterior edge is the most obtuse of any, and is quite rounded off in some; the exterior and anterior terminates also at top, outwards and forwards, a little higher than the others. At the bottom of all, near the bases of the horn, several irregular scabrous and oblique rings appear, which are tolerably well expressed in the figure of the tobacco horn given in Plate I. Vol. I. fig. 3.; but after this, the fibres of the horn take a spiral form, running over and parallel with the above-described twisted angles and sides of the horn, though in several places a half ring or scabrous inequality going across them is discernible. The forehead of this animal is flat, and tolerably broad at top, in proportion to what it is lower down about the eyes, where it becomes very narrow. It has a fore-lock standing erect, the whole length of its forehead. Its nose is sharp. Its breast is covered with a *paleare*, or loose skin, with long hair.

This animal has a great deal of fat, especially about the heart: from an old male which we gave chase to and shot, we obtained such a quantity of fine and tender fat, as we could with difficulty put into a box that would hold about ten pounds of butter. As at the beginning of our journey homewards through the desert, the hounds we had with us had unluckily for us devoured our stock of butter, a farmer, who still accompanied us, shewed us how to prepare the fat taken from about the heart of the elk, and to use it for dressing victuals with, and for eating with bread in the same manner as is commonly practised with goose-grease and hogs-lard. The taste of it also was very similar to these, and fully as good: and, indeed, if I may be supposed to have been able to form any judgment of the matter at a time when we were so sharp set, and in absolute want of any thing else of the kind, it was rather better. The breast is also extremely fat, and is always considered as a great delicacy. The flesh is universally finer grained, more juicy and better tasted than that of the *bartsbeest*. When the elk-antelopes are hunted, they always run, if possible, against the wind, even though the hunter himself should come from that side,

side, and attempt to drive them back, I have myself seen a most evident instance of this, when on a hunting party with three others. In fact, it is thought that being very fat and purfy, they find it easier to fetch their breath when they run against the wind. They keep together for the most part in large herds, and were supposed to migrate now and then to the southward, like the spring-boks, when any great drought, or failure as to rain and water, happens in the interior or northern parts of Arica. Just before our departure from *Agter Brunjes-boogte*, some Hottentots arrived there with the news, that they had seen, between the two *Visch-riviers*, an infinite number of elks, which just at that place turned back again and made towards the north. This piece of information was probably all very true; for on our return homewards, we found several spots, which before were green and covered with herbage, grazed off quite bare, and almost as much beaten and trampled under foot, as a place of encampment for cavalry. It was supposed, that such large herds as these, either would not deign to make way for any huntsman on horseback, or else that the foremost of them could not avoid making some resistance, on account of those in the rear pressing upon them. If this were the case, it would have been very unlucky for our small party to have met with this army of quadrupeds, as, in all probability, they would have inclosed us, and trod us under foot, in case we had not had time or room enough to have got on one side out of their way. The male elks, which are rather aged, and of course slow and tardy, keep apart from the rest of the herd; and are commonly so fat and heavy, as, in case of being chased, to tire immediately on the first onset. And indeed, of this species of antelope, the males are always the fattest and largest in the herd, and have evidently a fuller neck than the others; it is likewise these, that the hunter singles out and is sure to come up with first. Several people have assured me, that some of the younger and fleetest, but at the same time fatter sort of bucks, will at times, when they are hard run, drop down dead during the chase; and that melted fat, as it were, together with the blood, would then gush out of their nostrils.

Being

Being on a hunting-party on our way home, and observing a young buck of the elk-antelope species, a farmer who accompanied us, sent off his son, a lad about twenty years old, as being the lightest, as well as the best mounted of us all, to give chase to it; and by so doing, gave me likewise no small degree of pleasure, as long as I could get a view of the chase, which was for the space of more than a quarter of an hour. In consequence of their distance from me, and the great rate at which they went, the legs of the horse, as well as those of the elk, being scarcely discernible, both the sportsman and his game appeared to swim, or sail, as it were over the hills and plains, while they were mutually endeavouring to get to the windward of each other. In fact, the young huntsman had oftener than once the advantage in this point; but with a view to prolong the pleasure of the chase, and buoyed up by the ambitious hopes of being able to tire out his game, and afterwards drive it back to us, he purposely neglected several opportunities that offered of leaping from his horse, (as the sportsmen here are used to do) and shooting the flying foe. Besides, the air was now tolerably calm; and in this case, the animal in general does not strive so obstinately to get to the windward of its pursuers, as at other times; so that there have been instances known of spirited and alert sportsmen who, for their own pleasure, as well as because it was more convenient, have hunted elk-antelopes and other gazels, and driven them back, for many miles together, from the open plains, on to their own doors, before they have thought it worth while to fire their pieces at them. But to return to our sportsman; in the space of about two hours he comes back, wearied and confused, and pleading in his excuse that, having fired at the beast and wounded it, though not mortally, it had made its escape into a close thicket, while he was occupied in fastening his saddle, which had got loose; together with other excuses of that nature. He likewise added, that while he was pursuing the animal, he could plainly perceive a bloody froth exuding from its neck, along with the white foam which appears on most animals when hard run. This exudation, or sweating of blood, does not seem to me in the least improbable,

probable; however, I will not by any means pledge myself for the truth of it; as being so very unusual a circumstance, it ought to have been seen from a shorter distance, and confirmed by the testimony of several people, before it could be credited. Every body, however, in this country was firmly persuaded, (and, as it appears to me, not without cause) that although game of this kind, and hunted almost as hard as this, might escape for the present, they would however soon after grow stiff in their joints and die; or at least be so disabled, that the next time they were pursued either by sportsmen or wild beasts, they would the more easily become a prey to them. The case is quite different with horses, which are always prevented by their masters from drinking, or from being otherwise cooled too soon, when they are warm. Notwithstanding, almost all horses that have been much used in hunting, are pretty much spavined, and frequently are very stiff in their joints, and slow in their paces, till, previously to their being taken out a-hunting again, they have been ridden out a little, and their limbs, by this means, rendered pliable. One of our company had a large horse,—but as thin as a grey-hound,—which was very much foundered. This horse, however, when once warmed, was one of the swiftest I ever set eyes on.

These hunting-parties are not without their difficulties, and even danger for the hunters themselves; as besides that they cannot avoid sometimes being carried by their horses through coppices and thickets, (in which case their legs are scratched, and the skirts of their coats torn by the bushes) and are forced to leap over pits and rivulets, neither can they altogether avoid sinking at times into the holes and subterraneous passages, which are dug in the earth by the different kinds of animals I have before described. In chasing the elk-antelope near little *Fish* river in our way home on the first of February, I had the misfortune to have my horse, which was galloping full speed, sink with his fore feet into the ground: in consequence of which he, as it seemed to me and my companions in the chase, tumbled over head and heels, (*gat over de kop.*) I myself was thrown, with my gun in my hand, to a considerable distance from him, and was particularly

particularly hurt in both my wrists, of which I had not the perfect use for a long time. The gun, though it was cocked, did not go off in the fall. As soon as my horse got up, he galloped home again to our waggons, which were in sight, so that I had the additional mortification of being obliged to return on foot; a circumstance, which, in the case of hunting the buffalo or the lion, might have been attended with still worse consequences. My companions were so keen and intent on the chase, that they all rode on without giving themselves the trouble to see whether I needed any assistance or not.

The *elk-antelopes*, however, are none of them so swift as the *hartbeests*; the hide likewise of the neck, especially of that of the male, is thicker and tougher than either the hide of this latter or that of the common ox; and is considered, next to the buffalo's hide, to be the fittest for halters for oxen, traces for waggons, field-shoes, and the like purposes. The female has horns, like the male, but smaller; though these, as well as those of the male, are used both by the Hottentot men and women, for tobacco-pipes, in the manner I have mentioned before at page 164 Vol. I. (see also Plate I. fig. 3. of the same vol.) There is no porus sebaceus, or ceriferus, at the corner of the eye of this animal, as there is in the eye of the *gnu* and of the *hartbeest*. I observed a very singular circumstance in the last elk-antelope we shot, which was, that on each side of its eight front teeth, there was a cartilaginous process exactly resembling a tusk. These processes were somewhat flexible and elastic; in fact, they did not appear at all adapted to mastication, so that it was difficult to conjecture for what purpose nature had intended them. In the young live elk that I made a drawing of, it did not once enter into my head to examine how things were situated as to this process.

A beautiful tall *gazel* with long and slender shanks, which is larger, though much less clumsy and heavy, than the *elk-antelope*, by the colonists is called *Koedoe*. The horns too of the *koedoe*, besides that the spiral twist on them is more deeply embossed, and is embellished with a singularly prominent edge, or rib, are as long again as the horns of the elk. M. DE BUFFON, who has seen only the horns of both these animals, has, as I have already mentioned

mentioned, erroneously called the *Elk-antelope* by the name of *coudou*; which however properly belongs to the animal I am now describing, whose name he has, instead of this, distorted to *condoma*; a circumstance which in all probability proceeded from the letter to which M. DE BUFFON refers, having been ill written, or else from his having made a mistake in reading it; so that either in one case or the other, they turned the letter *u* in *coudou* topsy turvy, and made an *n* of it. He was forced to alter the termination also, otherwise we should have had two very distinct animals with the same name. By this means, also, the *elk-antelope* ran the risk of wearing the long stately horns of the *koedoe*.

Neither has M. HOUTTUYN been more fortunate in his *Natuurlyke Historie*, Vol. III. p. 267, in which he classifies them with the sheep. Excepting the horns, the whole of the figure he has given in Tab. XXVI. l. c. is good for nothing. Our great countryman LINNÆUS has been so far misled, as to refer to it in his *System of Nature* for the figure of the *ovis strepsiceros*; though the body they have put to the horns (which, however, never belonged to it) is certainly not like that of a sheep. A better figure is given in the *Nouv. Descrip. du Cap. de B. Esperance*, page 41, 42, the author of which assures us, that it was taken from the life. In the mean time I must own, that I had no cognizance whatever of the beard: I will not venture, however, to dispute the point very tenaciously, as I saw these animals alive only twice in the course of my hunting expeditions, though, indeed, that was at no great distance. M. PALLAS, who had examined the head of a *koedoe*, remarks in *Spic. I.* p. 1—17, that the *koedoe* has no beard, and therefore cannot be the *capra anonyma* of KOLBE. Mr PENNANT, who, in his *History of Quadrupeds*, Vol. I. p. 77, has described the *koedoe* accurately, under the name of the *striped antelope* from several skins of this animal, and who refers to the above-mentioned figure in the *Nouv. Descript. du Cap.* as being a good one, is altogether silent as to the beard. I have some time before asserted in the *Swedish Transact.* for 1779, p. 157, that the male of the *koedoe* had no horns; a circumstance which had not been remarked by any zoologist before, and which I would wish to con-

firm in this place; with the additional remark, that the *porus ceriferus*, which in a number of *gazels* is placed before the eye, is wanting in the *koedoe*. I assured myself concerning this point, by inspecting the body of a fawn of one of the animals just after it was shot.

A rusty brown is the predominant colour in this fawn's skin, which I brought home with me; the ridge of the back is also partly inclined to brown and partly to white; but the stripes which go downwards from it, to the number of eight or nine, are white; the hind part of the belly is of a white colour, which extends strait downwards on the fore part of the hind-legs in the form of a white list, terminating a hand's breadth above the hoofs; but directly above them on all the fore-feet there is a white spot, composed, as it were, of two; the fetlock-joints are extremely small, and the part below each of them is of a brown colour. On the breast again, there are also some marks of a dark brown. The forehead and the fore part of the nose are brown, the lower lip is white, and there is some white on the upper lip, on the knees, and on each side of the fore-legs; a white stripe half an inch in length runs forward from the internal angle of each eye, and these stripes almost meet together just above the nose; upon each of the cheek-bones there are two small white spots; the inner edges of the ears are covered with white hairs, and the upper part of the neck is ornamented with a brown mane of an inch long.

From the tall and slender form of the *koedoe*, I had imagined it to be a very swift-footed animal; but I have been assured by two colonists, that as to this it is not only very moderate, but also soon tires; so that it is more easily overtaken by the hounds than any other *gazel*: on the other hand, the males with their long horns defend themselves with great spirit against their foe, when he comes to close quarters with them. I can by no means suppose, that the large horns of the male are the reason of its running so slowly; for the female, which is free from this burthen, is not considered as swifter of foot than the male: so that I cannot conceive the reason, why nature has denied her the power of extricating herself from danger, both by means of her head and of her feet.

On

On the 29th of January, being on our way homewards, we came very close upon seven or eight *koedoes*, one of which, not having any dependence on its legs, fled for refuge into the river, where it got entangled in the weeds and grass that floated on the surface, and was seized and worried to death by our hounds. Two of our Hottentots swam to it afterwards, and cut off several slices from it. I found the flesh much of the same nature with that of the *hartbeest*, but the marrow was, at least in my opinion, extremely delicious. The *koedoe* is said to live more on shrubs and bushes, than any other of the gazels I have before-mentioned. I was making mention of the cartilages of the elk-antelope which resemble tusks, in the presence of a sportsman, who informed me, that the *koedoe* had processes exactly of the same kind.

Another gazel of the larger kind, is known by the name of *gemse-bok*, or *chamois* at the Cape. Dr FORSTER in his *Voyage round the World*, Vol. I. page 84, has already taken notice, how improper an appellation this is in many respects. The horns are well delineated in BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. XXXIII. Fig. 3. and there is a beautiful figure of the whole animal in the *Nouv. Description*. page 56, where the name of *pasan*, which had been given it by M. DE BUFFON, is retained. M. PALLAS, who, in his *Spic. Zool. Fasc. I.* page 14, hath called it the *antelope bezoartica*, has thought proper to change the name in his *Fasc. XII.* page 16 and 17, to that of *antelope oryx*. Mr PENNANT has described this gazel under the denomination of *Egyptian*, vid. his *Synopsis of Quadrupeds*, page 25; and his *Hist. of Quadrupeds*, p. 67. M. HOUTTUYN likewise by his Fig. 1. Tab. XXIV, which LINNÆUS refers to for his *capra gazella*, probably meant the *Cape chamois*. This animal, in all probability, is peculiar to the north-western part of the colony; for in the tracts of country I travelled through, I neither saw nor heard any thing of it. At Cape-Town, however, the horns are not very rare. I have one under my care in the cabinet of the Royal Academy, which is of a blackish colour, about three feet long, and almost perfectly straight, the lower half of it at the same time being distinguished by twenty or more craggy wavy rings projecting

jecting above the surface. The upper half is smooth, and goes off tapering by degrees to a sharp point, the diameter of the base being about an inch and a half. In other respects, this creature is described both by Mr PENNANT, and in the above-mentioned compilation, as being of an ash-colour somewhat inclining to red; the belly, legs, and face are white; but the spaces immediately before and round about the horn, together with the fore part of the upper extremity of the nose, and the lower part of the forehead, are black, or black bordering upon brown; a brownish black stripe also goes from the eyes to the chin, which is connected by another of the same kind with the above-mentioned spot on the nose and forehead. This animal is likewise said to be of a dark colour on the shoulders, a little on the fore part of the legs, on those parts where the belly terminates in the sides, on the tail itself, and all along the back and the neck. The tail appears to reach to the hocks, and the hoofs seem to be of an uncommon length; so, at least, they are represented in the figures alluded to above.

KOLBE's description of his elk (called the *elenn-thier* in the German edition, p. 145,) answers better in some degree to this *gazel* than to that which is actually known at the Cape by this name, and of which I have given a description; but whichever of these two it is that KOLBE means, his description is faulty at all events, and the weight he mentions, viz. 400 lb. is under the real weight of the animal. But be that as it will, there is the most manifest absurdity in KOLBE's assertion, that an animal of such a weight as this should be caught in a springe with a small cord, and drawn up into the air.

The *blaauw-bok* is also one of the large species of *gazel*, which, probably, are only to be found in the same district with the *gazel* just described; excepting, perhaps, a single one, which may happen at times by great chance to stray from these parts: for at *Krakeel-rivier*, I found they had preserved a skin of this animal. When this creature is alive its colour is said to resemble that of blue velvet, but when it is dead it is of a leaden colour. There is a beautiful figure of it by the name of the *Taciran*, to be seen at p. 58 of the compilation I have often referred to. On this subject the reader may also turn to Mr PENNANT'S

blue

blue antelope, and M. PALLAS's *antelope leucophaea*; which is thus called by the latter gentleman, from the circumstance of its being marked with a large white spot immediately before and beneath each eye. It has long white hairs on the belly; it has a short tail; its horns go backwards with a curve, being adorned with about four and twenty rings to three-fourths of their height; but the uppermost quarter is smooth, and goes off tapering by degrees to a point.

The *bonte-bok*, (the painted or pied goat) called by Mr PENNANT the *harnessed antelope*, and by M. PALLAS *antelope scripta*, I have already mentioned in Vol. I. page 91, as being somewhat less than the *hartbeest*; and again at page 158, as being larger than the *bosch-bok*. The *bonte-bok* is not to be found any farther to the eastward of the Cape than *Zwellendam*; but a farmer who had been in the country of *Tambuki* told me, that he had there again seen *bonte-boks*, though somewhat different from the before-mentioned.

The *gnu*, which I have described before at pages 90 and 129, and have given the figure of in Plate II. of this volume, I reckon, with still greater confidence than I did before, among the large gazels of Africa; since induced by the arguments I have made use of to this purpose in the Swedish Transactions, the great English PLINY, whose admirable History of Quadrupeds I have so often quoted in these sheets, has likewise thought proper to refer the *gnu* to the *gazel* kind.

The following belong to the smaller African *gazels*, (which, indeed, has been already treated of) having no *porus ceriferus* underneath the eye:

The *bosch-bok*, or *antelope sylvatica*, *cornibus erectis subtri-quetris spiralibus*, *corpore fusco, albo maculato, cauda brevissima*. This animal I have already spoken of at page 193. Vol. I. and have given the figure of it in Plate VI. of this volume. As the specific difference of the other *gazels* which are better known than this, may be found in the respective descriptions of each of them, or in some of the authors there quoted, I choose to omit the insertion of them here, in order to avoid prolixity; particularly as it would be of no use, excepting with regard to the making out of the nomenclature of the whole genus.

The *spring-bok*, or the bounding goat, (vid. page 60 to page 66, and Plate V. of this volume) is called by M. PALLAS, in his Fasc. XII. page 15, the *antelope pygargus*.

Besides the gazels above-mentioned, there are several others of which I am not able to give the zoologists so good an account as they may require of me. I suppose, nevertheless, that the enumerating of them here will not be altogether useless, as by this means the attention of naturalists and travellers, may be turned to them in a particular manner, so that some light may at length be thrown on this principal branch of zoology, which has hitherto been so much involved in darkness. These animals are the following :

The *ree-bok* is a gregarious animal, two feet in height. The predominant colour of it is an ash-colour, somewhat resembling that of a hare, but a little inclining to red; the belly and anus are white, as well as the under part of the tail, which is very short; the horns are black, quite straight, and in position, form and substance, very like those of the *gemse bok*, but are scarcely a foot in length, and proportionally very small, consequently very taper at the end and sharp-pointed; for which reason the Hottentots often keep them by them, and use them as awls or bodkins for the purpose of boring holes, when they make or repair their shoes or cloaks. The hair likewise of this creature appears to be softer and finer than common. Its flesh is dry, and is reckoned worse than that of any other gazel.

This animal was not uncommon in *Hottentots Holland*, *Artaquas-kloof*, and *Lange-kloof*. I must confess, however, that I have drawn up the account just given of this animal, from memory only, as I had unluckily lost the original description, together with the drawing. In a journey like mine, losses of this kind are not to be wondered at. At times, when I was wet through with heavy showers of rain, or in consequence of having forded a river, a paper or two that I had about me, must necessarily have been in the same predicament. The overturning of our waggon likewise, especially at night, which happened at two different times, was of very little advantage to my collections, especially to my insects.

The

The *riet*, (or reed) *ree-bok*, I saw but once, and then I had but a hasty glimpse of it, as it ran by me. This was during my residence at *Ager Bruntjes-boogte*, and it was there only that I heard any mention of this creature. It commonly keeps concealed among the reeds and marshy places, and is thought to resemble the animal last described a little, from which two circumstances it has obtained the name it bears. It is, however, as large again as the *ree-bok*; they are monogamous, or keep only in pairs, and, if I rightly remember, the females are said to be without horns.

Notwithstanding all the presents and offers I have made to my correspondents at the Cape, they have not yet fulfilled their promises of sending me the skins of these two animals, which are probably a species of the *capra* or *GAZEL* genus, hitherto wholly unknown.

The *vlaksteen-bok* was the name given at *Ager Bruntjes-boogte* to animals (probably of the gazel kind) two feet high, which used, in some sort, to herd together on the *vlaktes*, or plains, though generally dispersed and at a distance from each other. I likewise saw this creature twice on my journey homeward through the desert. Though when at a certain distance, it did not seem in the least shy, it always took care, however, not to let any of us come within gun-shot of it. It must consequently be hunted down on horseback, if the ground is not too stony and rough. Its colour was a very pale-red or a mouse-colour, (*colore murino*) for which reason it was also said to be called by some the *bleek-bok*, or *vaale reebok*. It is more stiff and unwieldy than the *ree-bok*, and more resembles the animal generally called the *sleen-bok* at the Cape in its shape.

The animals which the colonists call *sleen-bok*, *grys-bok*, *duyker-bok*, and *klipspringer*, are about two feet in height, being probably of the *gazel* species, and are pretty frequent near the Cape. But on this very account, and in consequence of my having been often hindered by my botanical researches, I delayed the investigation of these animals till it was too late, as I departed for Europe much sooner than I expected. It is some consolation to me, notwithstanding, to reflect, that this loss may be easily repaired; nay, indeed, more than repaired, by some other person;

person; perhaps that obligation may be expected from Messrs FORSTERS, who, when at the Cape, were occupied in making drawings, as well as accurate descriptions of these quadrupeds; on which account also, I even then was led to think of my researches into this matter as the more unnecessary. In the mean while, however, I must remark, that I am perfectly satisfied that these animals are of species distinct from each other, and that the females have no horns; and, if I remember well, they have all a porus ceriferus under the eye, excepting, according to what I was informed, the *duyker-bok*. The flesh likewise of this last animal was also alledged to be very dry and tough, when compared with that of the others, of which I tasted, and which seemed to me, as to the high flavour and dryness of the meat, to have some resemblance to the flesh of the common hare.

The colour of the *steen-bok* is reddish, with a white spot above its eyes, and probably is a variety of Mr PENNANT's red antelope. Hist. of Quadrupeds, p. 76.

The *grys-bok* is greyish in colour, with black ears, and a large black spot around the eyes, being probably the *A. Grimmia* in Spicil. Zoolog. I. p. 8. Tab. III.

The *klippspringer* is of a lightish red colour, tinged with yellow, and intermixed with black streaks; the tips and edges of the ears are black. The tails of these animals were very short: the horns of all the males, if I rightly remember, are not so long as their ears, being in some degree straight, and at the same time round, smooth, sharp-pointed, black, and standing at a great distance from one another, they probably differ in their position. The *klippspringer* has acquired the name it bears, from the circumstance of its running with the greatest speed, and making great bounds even upon the steepest precipices and in the most rocky places; so that, like the other two, it cannot be easily caught with hounds. It resembles Mr PENNANT's *swift antelope*, l. c. in this respect. As to the *duyker-bok*, or diving goat, I have only had one single glimpse of it. The colour appeared to be dark brown, and its manner of running in the highest degree uncommon; as it would make a bound at intervals, rising in its leap with its neck erect, and bringing it down between its legs in its descent, and then continuing its course

on the ground. This, perhaps, among the bushes, had the appearance of diving, and was the origin of its name.

Considerable numbers of *Apes*, or *baboons*, reside in the woody part of the hill, at the foot of which little *Visch-rivier* runs. They are said to have long teeth or tusks like dogs, and to be very nimble footed, strong, and difficult to kill, so that they will even force the tigers at times to quit their hold, and part with their lives to the hounds at a dear price. For this reason the colonists are not so fond of hunting them. However, one day, when several baboons appeared very near the farm where we were lodged, I prevailed upon my host to set his dogs upon them. One of these baboons, which seemed rather aged and inactive, and perhaps could not reach the mountains so cleverly as the rest, took refuge in a low tree down on the plain. My gun was at this time loaded with what they call *steen-bok* shot, or shot about the size of a common pea; and with these, at the distance of only fifteen paces, I hit the animal on the left breast; however, although the creature was mortally wounded, it was able to remain on the tree several minutes, and during that time did not give the least cry or groan. At last, when obliged to quit its hold on the tree, the dogs fell upon it before it reached the ground. I now found that there was very good ground for what I had been formerly told, viz. that there was no species of hunting in which the dogs shew so much fury and rancour as in the chase of monkeys or baboons; our dogs having wounded the animal in a most dreadful manner, before they could be forced to quit it. This creature's head very much resembled that of a dog, and the tusks were about half an inch in length; the hair was of a yellowish brown colour; the tail was nearly equal to the body in length, and was terminated by a tuft of hair, so that in this respect it was like the tail of the lion. The extreme length of the animal from head to foot was five feet; the colour was like that of the common baboon or a mixture of yellow and brown. It is not improbable, that this baboon is the *simia cynocephalus* of the *Systema Naturæ*; though the *cauda floccosa* of this animal is not mentioned in the *differentia specifica*, as the tails of such monkeys as are preserved in a state of confinement are usually cut

cut short by their keepers. During my journey I saw by accident a young baboon or two with short cut tails, which were kept chained up, and I was told they were natives of the Cape colonies; but they had not a dog's nose and large tusks like this one, so that they probably formed a distinct species; nor were they of such a dark colour as Mr PENNANT describes in his *ursine baboon*, which he imagines is a native of the Cape. The skin of the monkey I had killed, had been too much torn by the dogs to be worth preserving; but as I was anxious to know, what this animal, which in so many respects resembles the human race, subsisted upon in his savage state, I opened his stomach, and found it was filled with a vegetable like spinach, cut small and stewed: this animal, probably, eats certain bulbs and roots also, like the *Bosbies-men*; though at that time at least, its diet did not seem to consist of a mixture of different substances, neither fruit nor berries of any sort being to be discovered in these parts, at least not in that quantity to deserve to be ranked among the articles on which these animals fed. They were not in any degree thought to have lived upon animal food; besides, it is well known, that many kinds of monkeys, when in a state of confinement, subsist only on vegetables, and upon this kind of food are brisk and lively; on which account, as one can scarcely entertain so bad an opinion of M. DE DUFFON, viewing him both as a naturalist and author of a considerable number of large volumes on the subject of zoology, as to imagine him ignorant of this circumstance that most of the monkey species adhering in general to a vegetable diet; or of the great similarity between the viscera of these creatures and those of man; for this cause I say, it is not easy to imagine, what could lead this famous author to assert, that animals which have only one stomach and short intestines, are necessitated, like man, to feed upon flesh? *Les animaux qui n'ont qu'un estomac, & les intestins courts, sont forces, comme l'homme, a se nourrir de chair.* (BUFFON, Tom. VII. p. 36.)

The necessary result of this doctrine is, that the horse and rhinoceros, which, have in like manner, only one stomach, with intestines very short in proportion, should be obliged, like man, to subsist upon flesh? M. DE BUFFON,

now, indeed, in order the farther to enforce his opinion, informs us, l. c. to compare the bowels of animals with each other: but in fact, very unluckily for his position, it is precisely this comparison, which when made between man, the ape, the rhinoceros, and the horse; or again, between the diminutive fructivorous ape, *saimiri*, Tom XV. and those carnivorous animals the *cougar* and *lynx*, Tom. IX. or the wolf, Tom VII. which militates against him. We find this learned author also, who is himself, perhaps, fonder of animal than of vegetable diet, at page 32 and the following pages of Tom VII. urging in the strongest manner the inevitable necessity that mankind is under of taking animal food; and in one place he breaks out in this manner, "*Were man reduced to the necessity of subsisting on bread and vegetables only, he would hardly be able to support life in a weak and languishing condition.*" From such assertions as these one is almost led to suspect, that this ample and voluminous historian of the animal world, has attained but a slight and superficial knowledge of the human race; and that, giving eloquence and paradox the preference of solid argument, he is at any time more ready to adopt falsehood and error, than to arrive at truth. For, admitting that the *Bramins*, who live without animal food, are rather, as M. DE BUFFON will have it, a peculiar sect, than a particular race of people, still, notwithstanding, they are men, who live and increase their species, and are certainly in no shape in a weakly and debilitated state. I have been informed, that a great part of the poor in China live, and that tolerably well, upon rice only. The inferior class of inhabitants in the South-Sea, (the *Tataus*) and even those of the higher classes, usually beg meat of us, as it was a great rarity with them; and though many of them could very seldom procure any fish, and even that but in small quantities, they notwithstanding prospered very well on this chiefly vegetable diet, and were so strong and robust as, not to give any other proofs of their strength, for the sake of a glass bead or a nail, frequently disputed with each other which of them should carry some of us carnivorous Europeans on their backs over places, which we could not have otherwise crossed unless wet-shod. This duty they performed so well, as
never

never once to make a trip even in pretty rapid streams with rough bottoms of gravel, though the water at the same time reached up to their middles, and we sat astride upon their shoulders, with our guns in our hands. The wretched island, named *Easter Island*, is a very satisfying proof, that human nature can by means of custom, be content with very little nourishment; for though we walked quite over the island, and explored a great part of it, we could only see one little boat, which, by the bye, was likewise very much patched and cobbled; nor could we find timber sufficient to make another like it; so that I do not know what could lead Capt. Cook to affirm that they had three or four boats. Nor did we see the smallest vestiges of any kind of fishing-tackle, nor any signs, that the inhabitants were in the practice of getting their food from the sea or its shore. They had, it is true, some cocks and hens, but as these were but small sized and exceedingly tame, and at the same time so far from being plenty, that we barely saw fifty of them in a district containing seven or eight hundred people, we may with the greatest propriety assert, that there were a great number of persons upon this island who lived almost, if not wholly, without any animal food of any kind whatsoever. There were some roots there, it is true; but as these were not very plentiful, and are held in detestation in the other islands, I do not know, whether the reasons Captain Cook gives are sufficient to lead one to suppose, that the inhabitants of this island made use of them as food; and if they did, they would seldom be able to make a good meal of them. It is true indeed, that these people were almost all of them spare and lean; but then it must be remembered likewise, that there was a very great scarcity of vegetables besides; as the vegetable produce of all the country hardly consisted of twenty plants, among which the pisang, yams, sweet potatoes, and the sugar cane, were the principal articles I thought they could make use of. On the contrary, these people were agile, as swift as goats, and appeared to be very healthy. Their strength was not tried; but that their vegetable food did not make them backward in the performance of the Cyprian rites, an effect which M. DE BUFFON, at page 33, seems

seems willing to attribute to it, the reader may be easily satisfied of, by perusing Dr FORSTER's description of the Messalina-like temperament of the women. One of them, who had swam to our ship, when it was at a very great distance from the shore, was said, within the compass of a few hours, to have suffered the embraces of seventeen of our sailors and marines, before she swam again to land.

In order still farther to refute M. DE BUFFON's assertion as to the indispensable necessity of an animal diet, we may remark, that in the Society Islands the inhabitants had no great superabundance of meat for themselves, much less had they any fish or flesh to give to their dogs; so that these animals, which, by M. DE BUFFON's system, particularly came under the denomination of carnivorous animals, might with propriety be said to be fed almost, if not altogether, on vegetable food only. I had no cause, however, to consider them as feeble and weak; though, on the contrary, the roasted ones which now and then appeared at our table, as well as at those of the principal inhabitants, were convincing evidences that they were in general fat and in good case. Besides, since our European hounds, which certainly belong with more propriety than man to the class of carnivorous animals, are often nourished for a long time together exceedingly well with nothing besides flour and water, why should not several kinds of vegetables satisfy mankind? The slaves and the Boshies-men at the Cape, who are employed in the service of such farmers as do nothing but graze sheep, and have consequently little or no butter-milk, and at the same time live in parts where the game has been previously destroyed, are yet kept in good case by their masters, almost wholly with bread and other preparations of meal and flour; for they are exceedingly careful not to lavish their sheep on their slaves, these sheep being very often the only articles from which in some farms they can procure a little ready cash and pay their taxes. In THOMAS GAGE's voyage to New Spain we find, that the poor lived on *maiz* and a sort of *phaseolus*, or kidney-bean; though those which live nearer the town, now and then, got a little meat, at least on Sundays.

In ULLOA's Voyage, Tom. I. p. 148, 149, we have the following paragraph: "The poor people here have nothing to live upon but *papas*; these roots stand them in the stead of all other nourishment. The Creoles prefer them to fowls and the finest flesh meats." Who is there that is ignorant, how great a proportion cacao beans make of the food of the inhabitants in the country where they grow; and how soon people of wasted and reduced constitutions, by their means, recover their flesh and strength? Nay, we have an example of a ship's crew, which for two months had nothing else but chocolate for their support, and were very hearty and well with it.

Now, although there are many families in Upper Egypt which subsist wholly upon dates, (vide HASSELIQVIST, p. 501) not to mention several other similar instances, yet I will not consider them as absolutely conclusive as to M. DE BUFFON; as this author, at p. 33, l. c. advances, that abstinence from animal food would destroy the human race; or, at least in our climate, would render it unfit for the propagation of its species, farther says, "It is possible, indeed, that a vegetable diet may be practicable in the southern countries, where the fruits are riper, the herbs have more substance in them, the roots are more succulent, and the seeds contain more nourishment." Laying aside this gentleman's *may be*, I rather incline, by instances brought from Europe and our own climate, fully to refute his delusive doctrines as to the absolute necessity of an animal diet. I cannot, however, avoid the remark, *en passant*, in opposition to this author, that he has the less cause to consider a vegetable diet as unfitting a man for propagation, as the vegetable kingdom produces the greatest quantity of substances which promote venery. Besides a great many plants belonging to the *gynandria* class, along with several others which might be mentioned, we have chocolate and salep, which even the more ignorant part of mankind know to be possessed of *aphrodisiac* qualities: peas likewise, turneps, cabbages, and other flatulent vegetables, are considered and that not without foundation nor unwarranted by experience, as possessing these virtues in some degree. This philosopher, indeed, who entertains so great a prejudice against vegetable diet,

et, might have learned even from the most illiterate, that certain vegetables raised by fermentation, as for example good wine and ale, in proper doses, increase, in this respect, not only the *velle* but also the *posse*, the inclination as well as the ability. With respect to the greater degree of perfection attributed by M. DE BUFFON to the plants of the southern countries, compared with those which are produced in Europe, it is contrary not only to all probably, but also to what we know for certain of the œconomy of nature, which brings to as great a degree of perfection the root, stem, leaves, and seed of a plant she had intended for the Alps, as of one which she has planted immediately under the line.

One cannot in a particular manner avoid wondering the more, that M. DE BUFFON should possibly conceive, that the plants which are produced in the southern climates, have more substance in them than those of France; as, agreeable to the testimony of OLAFSON and several others, a bushel of the *lichen Islandicus*, or Iceland moss, a plant which is produced in the most northern part of Europe, is equal to two bushels of wheat; and, as M. DE BUFFON also supposes, that the roots in the southern countries are more succulent than those in the northern, are we to presume it granted that he did not find the turneps in Burgundy to be sufficiently juicy?

But the truth is, that as far as a knowledge of physiology and botany, and above all mature reflection, together with a habit of method and arrangement, are necessary in order to enable a man to form a right judgment as to the food of animals, this great naturalist has in this place, as well as in many others, happened to stumble upon a subject, to which he is a total stranger: of this we have abundant evidences, in the detracting aspersions he has thrown out against LINNÆUS, and his botanic system, although this system has been adopted by all good naturalists. M. DE BUFFON, therefore, would have done better, had he adhered to his usual admeasurements and prolix descriptions of animals, their skins, skeletons, and horns; taking care, however, in future, to make his observations in a more accurate manner than he has done as to the horns of oxen; on which subject he has happened very unluckily to make a material blunder, as I shall

be obliged to point out more at large a little farther on, when I proceed to describe the *camelopardalis*.

In the mean while, let us conclude the discussion of the question, how far a man, at least in France or Europe, (*au moins dans ces pays*, vide BUFFON, l. c.) may be imagined to linger on through life in a weak and debilitated state, or to be incapacitated for the propagation of his species, by subsisting on vegetable diet, such as is likely to be found in these countries; i. e. potatoes, turneps, turnep-rooted cabbage, carrots, onions, asparagus, scorzonera, skirrets, the lathyrus tuberosus, salads, and cabbages of all kinds, artichokes, peas, beans, bread, puddings, and all the other different preparations of meal or corn, chefnuts, almonds, apples, pears, and plums of all sorts, melons, pumpkins, cucumbers, olives, oil, figs, grapes, berries of all kinds, wine, beer, &c.

The very mentioning of these vegetables seems to be an abundant proof of the absurdity of M. DE BUFFON's opinion; but as he will not possibly give up the point without the adducing of good authority to the contrary, I shall in the first place refer him to his justly famous countryman TOURNEFORT's excellent observations on the Levant, where he remarks, that the food of the inhabitants of certain districts in that part of the world consisted almost wholly of bread, figs, and grapes, with sometimes raw cucumbers. Farther, M. DE BUFFON might have learned from LINNÆUS's *Amanitates Academica*, Tom. I. p. 137, that the *athletæ* of former times, whose chief occupation was wrestling and fighting, for which purpose a strengthening diet was doubtless necessary, lived principally upon figs before it was the custom to eat flesh. We are likewise told, l. c. that the poor, who were appointed to guard the fig-trees and vineyards, grew plump and fat in the space of two months by feeding on these fruits; with the addition of a very small quantity of bread; and that the foxes, which had an opportunity of creeping into places of this kind, generally grew so fat upon this diet, as to be made use of by some people as food.

I have observed a great number of *Dalecarlians*, who wrought, for a long time together at a hard and laborious business, live almost wholly upon hasty-pudding and beer,
without

without even a morsel of bread; nor was this considered by them as in any degree hard fare. I have also seen many poor cottagers in *Uplandia*, who for a long time together even wanted bread, especially for their children, so that they were obliged to bring them up upon pancakes and frumenty made without milk.

Those who in the province above-mentioned or elsewhere have an opportunity of adding a little milk to their vegetable food, may notwithstanding be considered as subsisting mostly on a vegetable diet; as, agreeable to M. GEOFFROI, the constituent parts of milk are almost wholly the same with those of vegetables. According to the accounts I had from the English, many of the poor people in Ireland live on potatoes only, with a little milk at times; and a person who resided several years ago, for a long time in Russia assured me, that the common people in some places there lived wholly upon sour-crust and groats: and also upon sour bread, raw cucumbers, onions, salt, *quasi*, and *tradakna*, a dish made of oatmeal dried in the oven, and mixed up with water: so that of thirty thousand peasants belonging to a certain nobleman who lived on the borders of Muscovy, there were very few who had any opportunity of tasting either flesh or fish four times a year. M. DE BUFFON may see, besides, in HALLER, Tom. VI. Lib. XIX. a long list of such authors as have produced proofs and instances that mankind in Europe must of necessity be and actually are able to live without animal food: and indeed, why should it not be so, as the same glutinous matter which is so peculiarly nourishing in animal food, is found also in vegetables more especially as, to omit mentioning many other instances which might be adduced, it is an established fact, that those people who are condemned to work in the galleys, as well as many others, can put off with a certain portion of only bread and water; and also, that the inhabitants of the Apennine Mountains subsist almost wholly upon chestnuts.

The usefulness of a vegetable diet in the hypochondriasis, obstinate gout, and other stubborn and pertinacious disorders, has, besides, of late been placed in a very striking light by Dr W. GRANT, in his *Essay on the Atrabilious Constitution*, p. 399, and seq. in which exam-

ples are given of its having not only greatly contributed towards the patient's health, and giving them fresh strength and vigour, but made them, as it were, younger than formerly. In the same publication we are also informed, that this diet may be had recourse to with safety by persons far advanced in years; and that it must be continued for the space of six weeks only, or two years at most.

The *camelopardalis* is, as I have mentioned at p. 109 of this Volume, the tallest of all quadrupeds when measured at the fore-part of its body; and though it is only to be found in those parts of the colony which lie farthest towards the north-west, deserves, however, an accurate description, especially here, together with the other African animals. The latest and best accounts of the real shape and other properties of this animal have been given to the public by the present Commandant at the Cape, Major GORDON, who shot one of them in the district of *Anamaquas*; by which means, the public has been gratified with a very accurate drawing and description of it by M. ALLAMAND, in his edition of M. DE BUFFON's History of Animals, Supplement DE LA GIRAFFE, p. 46. Of this description I shall here lay an abstract before my readers.

When this animal holds its neck strait and erect, its height is, from the crown of the head to the ground, 15 feet two inches; the length of it, from the chest to the anus, five feet seven inches; from the top of the shoulders to the ground about ten feet; but from the loins only eight feet two inches; a difference which is occasioned partly by the length of the shoulder blades, which are two feet long, and partly from a sharp process of the first vertebra of the back, which projects more than a foot beyond the rest. From the breast to the ground it measures five feet and a half; the neck, which is ornamented with a mane like that of the zebra, is six feet in length, and of consequence twice the length of the camel's; the head is more than two feet long, and resembles in some degree the head of a sheep; the upper lip is rather larger and thicker than the under, but both of them are covered with stiff hairs; the eyes of this creature are large and beautiful; its fore-teeth small,
and

and eight in number, and are only to be found in the lower jaw, though the animal has six grinders on both sides of each jaw. There is a knob directly before the horns, which proceeds from an elevation of part of the cranium, and projects two inches above the surface; and behind them, or in the crag of the neck, there are two smaller ones, which are formed by the subjacent glands; the horns are seven inches in length, i. e. a little shorter than the ears; they rather incline backwards, and are rather broader and rounded off at the ends, where they are surrounded with long hairs, which reach beyond the horny part, forming a tuft. In short, the horns are covered, like those of other animals, with a cutaneous and hairy substance; but the interior substance of them is said to resemble the heart or boney part of the horns of gazels and oxen, and to be processes of the scull itself. On the horns of this animal, when aged, small irregular elevations have been observed, which M. ALLAMAND supposes to be the buds, as it were, of future branches.

The colour of this animal is a white ground, with large reddish spots standing pretty close to each other; which spots, in such animals as are more advanced in years, incline to a dark-brown or black, but in the others border upon the yellow. The tail is slender and small, and is terminated by a large tuft of very coarse and mostly black setaceous hairs; the fore parts of the hoofs are much higher than the back parts. This animal has no fetlocks, which all other hoofed animals have.

When this creature goes fast it does not limp, as some have thought, but sometimes paces, and sometimes gallops. Every time it lifts up its fore-feet it throws its neck back, which it holds erect on other occasions; notwithstanding this, it is by no means slow when pursued, as M. DE BUFFON supposes it is, but, on the contrary, a fleet horse is necessary to hunt it.

When eating the grass from the ground, it sometimes bends one of its knees, as horses do; and in plucking leaves and small branches from high trees, it brings its fore-feet about a foot and a half nearer the hind-feet than usual. A camelopardalis which Major Gordon wounded in the leg, so that it was not able to raise itself from the ground, nevertheless did not shew the least signs of

of anger or resentment; but when its throat was cut, spurned against the ground with a force far exceeding that of any other animal. The viscera resembled those of gazels, but this animal had no *porus ceriferus*. The flesh of the young ones is very good eating, but has at times a strong flavour of a certain shrub, which is thought to be a species of *mimosa*. The Hottentots are remarkably fond of the marrow, and hunt the beast principally for the sake of it, and kill it with their poisoned arrows. Of the skin they make vessels, in which they hold water and other liquors.

M. DE BUFFON, having very unadvisedly taken it into his head to declare war not only against LINNÆUS himself, but against his disciples also, has, in a prolix introduction to his Dissertation upon the *camelopardalis*, (*Giraffe*, Tom. XIII.) insulted in a particular manner the memory of Dr HASSELQUIST, a man whose merit has appeared conspicuous in several different sciences. *School-boy, pedant, blunderer*, &c. are the terms not more reproachful than unmerited, in which M. DE BUFFON speaks of a man, who at a period too early alas! for the interests of science, yet crowned with the applause of the literati of Europe, fell a victim to his zeal for natural history. I could sincerely have wished to have avoided this display of M. DE BUFFON's ungenerous conduct, that it might not come to the knowledge of any others (besides those who are already acquainted with the fact) how far, on occasion of the description of the above-mentioned animal, he has forgot the language of a gentleman; but my respect for truth in general, and a desire to throw light on my present subject, the history of animals, forbid my silence on this head.

The respect which I also justly have for M. HASSELQUIST, on account of his merit, and a full conviction of his innocence, call upon me to defend him; and that more especially from the reproaches he has received for not having mentioned in his description of the *camelopardalis*, whether or not this animal sheds its horns. If it be a fault in Dr HASSELQUIST not to have mentioned what it was impossible for him to see; and not to have described, as M. DE BUFFON does, in the most ample manner, what he could not possibly know, I must then confess myself in fault on the same grounds; as, though

in fact I was permitted to draw up a description of the dried head of a camelopardalis at the Cape, yet I could not gain permission to saw in pieces or dissect the horns, as they had been promised by the governor to a particular friend of his in Europe. It is much to be wished, indeed, that M. DE BUFFON had followed Dr HASSELQUIST's example in this respect, in which case his *Natural History* would have been much shorter, and much more useful and authentic; and, what would have been still better, our oxen and cows would have been allowed to keep their horns on their heads in the way in which nature has ordained they should, viz. without shedding them at the end of three years in conformity to the ignorant assertion of M. DE BUFFON, Tom. IV. p. 459, and of the edition revised by Mr ALLAMAND, p. 176. He there says, "Ainsi la castration ni le sexe ne changent rien a la crue & a la chute des dents: cela ne change rien non plus a la chute des cornes, car elles tombent egalement a trois ans au taureau, au bœuf & a la vache, & elles sont remplacees par d'autres cornes qui, comme les secondes dents, ne tombent plus; celles du bœuf & de la vache deviennent seulement plus grosses & plus longues que celles du taureau. L'accroissement de ces secondes cornes ne se fait pas d'une maniere uniforme, & par un developpement egal; la premiere annee, c'est a dire, la quatrieme annee de l'age du bœuf, il lui pousse deux petites cornes pointues, nettes, unies, & terminees vers la tete par une espee de bourrelet, l'annee suivante ce bourrelet s'eloigne de la tete, pousse par un cylindre de corne qui se forme, & qui se termine aussi par un autre bourrelet & ainsi de suite, car tant que l'animal vit les cornes croissent." For the information of such persons as have had no opportunity of being better acquainted with M. DE BUFFON and his works, I shall only observe, that this celebrated man, who, after a minute investigation of every concomitant circumstance (in consequence of which he has also favoured us with a particular description of the whole process) thought himself authorised to advance, that a comet, having struck in its course, against the sun, beat several pieces out of it, of which the planets were formed, and has likewise calculated the exact time which each of these celestial bodies respectively took

took to cool.—But enough has been said of a blunder, which the most illiterate cottager is capable to rectify, if it should happen to mislead any raw school-boy, totally ignorant of natural history. However, as we are now upon the subject of horns, I cannot help requesting M. DE BUFFON to inform me, how the smallest elk's horns, Tom. XII. Tab. XLVI. could grow from the size which, at page 326, under the article *maxames*, they are said to be of, (viz. not quite six inches long;) how these, I say, could grow so rapidly, at page 357, 358, in the article *coudou*, to the length of two feet? if, indeed, the nice admeasurements of M. DAUBENTON, page 377, 378, MCXCIX. & MCC. are in every respect to be depended upon. Nor can I easier comprehend, why Messrs DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON make use of the same horns for two animals totally different; by doing which, they have led two other zoologists, certainly in other respects the greatest and most accurate in Europe, in the same manner to refer to horns of one and the same species, for two different animals; though this, indeed, is not so much a matter of surprise, these gentlemen having too much complaisance to harbour such a degree of mistrust as to the *Histoire Naturelle*, as, indeed, was in this case necessary; nor could they easily suspect so palpable a mistake in this great work of Messrs DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON, concerning which, however, I doubt, that many people will pass the same judgment, as M. DE BUFFON has done at SEBA's *thesaurus*. But I must compose a treatise consisting of many volumes, were I to proceed in dissecting M. DE BUFFON's work; I shall therefore content myself at present with making, as shortly as possible, a few remarks on the *camelopardalis* and the *viverra ichneumon*, (the *giraffe* and *mangoust* BUFFON,) on account of the descriptions of which M. HASSELQUIST has been so much abused.

M. DE BUFFON has not been able to point out, much less to prove, that any blunder has been committed by HASSELQUIST; but why does he then blame this learned and highly deserving *academician*? It is, indeed, astonishing, that he should consider HASSELQUIST's descriptions as prolix, when, in truth, the same animals are described in one and the same volume of M. DE BUFFON's own writings;

writings; one of them in at least twice, and the other twelve times as diffuse a manner; notwithstanding which, this same volume is swelled out still farther with admeasurements of the *vagina* and urethra of the rat. Is it possible to refrain here from enquiring, for what end all this is? since the animal referred to has nothing extraordinary in the proportion of this part, and stands in need of no assistance as to its copulation, and never has any occasion either for the *catheter* to be applied, or to be cut for the stone. The very cat itself, an animal which every old woman has it in her power to measure and examine in the corner of her chimney, has also been obliged to undergo the most particular and tedious admeasurements in the *Histoire Naturelle*, though at the same time, by means of the beautiful engravings, which, more than any thing else, threw a light on this work, the learned world, according to M. DE BUFFON's own acknowledgement, l. c. page 9, might have very well spared these trifles.

M. HASSELQUIST's Latin, which M. DE BUFFON acknowledges is no Latin at all, is notwithstanding extremely good, and exactly such language as is requisite for the purposes of science, concise, expressive, and easily comprehended by any person who has studied the language, and may even be understood by any school-boy that has made the least progress in this department of learning. It is not HASSELQUIST's fault, that his description as it is quoted by M. DE BUFFON, l. c. page 7 and 8, from negligence, ignorance, or malice, has been so badly copied from the original edition, that e. g. from it may be concluded, that the animal's teeth and tongue are round, and are placed on its head together with its horns, &c. How was it possible for this circumstance to escape the critical eyes of the great BUFFON, supposing indeed that he understands Latin, and, as he expresses it at page 15, l. c. is capable of seizing the genuine knowledge of nature by means of *la vue immediate de l'esprit & le coup d'oeil du genie*?

In short, I am sorry that Dr HASSELQUIST's description should seem dry to M. DE BUFFON; but I cannot help thinking, that if it had been stuffed and seasoned with unjust and ill-natured criticisms, with conjectures
and

and mistakes, even though it had been composed in the French language, and in the most tumid and high-flown style, most lovers of truth and natural knowledge would have found it in the highest degree disgusting. The reader needs only compare Major GORDON's description with that of Messrs DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON, in order to be convinced of the insignificancy and futility of their tedious deductions and calculations.

Had M. DE BUFFON taken the trouble to understand, and made use of HASSELQUIST's Latin description, instead of quoting it for no other purpose than that of criticising it right or wrong, he would have known, that the head belonging to the skin described by M. HASSELQUIST, was four spans, or at least two feet long; and of course, that the descriptions of OPIAN, HELIODORUS, and STRABO, are by no means adapted, as M. DE BUFFON affirms they are, to give a tolerably just idea of the *camelopardalis*, or *giraffe*; for, according to these, a *giraffe*, of the size of a camel, has a head not above twice as large as that of an ostrich: a creature which would certainly make a figure in Prince P***'s collection of monsters. (Vide BRYDONE's Tour, Vol. I. page 93.) We are, however, too well acquainted with, and have too high an esteem for, the extensive genius and learning of the Count DE BUFFON, in the least to suspect him to be of the same taste; although, besides the circumstance above alluded to concerning the head, he terms the *camelopardalis* at one and the same time the handsomest, and, as to its legs, the most enormously disproportionate animal in the whole creation; though other people are apt to consider that only as beautiful which is proportionable. M. DE BUFFON might also have learnt from Dr HASSELQUIST's accurate description of this quadruped, that neither the head nor legs are so disproportionate, as he supposes them to be. In fine, Major GORDON did not find this animal so tottering, slothful, and unwieldy, as it has pleased M. DE BUFFON, without any authority, but that of his own prolific imagination, to represent it in the description he has given of it.

As to the *viverra ichneumon*, or the *mangouss*, I shall only say, that at the Cape I had an opportunity of comparing M. HASSELQUIST's description of it with the creature

ture itself, and found it remarkably accurate. This same gentleman having observed in a note, that the French, when in Egypt, are accustomed to bestow French names on the natural objects of which they have no knowledge, and consequently have in all probability given the name of *rat de pharaon* to this animal; M. DE BUFFON looks upon this remark as an attack upon the French nation. But if M. DE BUFFON means by this, to excite his countrymen against Dr HASSELQUIST, he must pardon me when I tell him, that I am too well acquainted with the generosity and discernment of the generality of the French nation, to suppose that his desires would be gratified. For my own part, I can have no inducement on the score of any national predilection to take Dr HASSELQUIST's part against M. DE BUFFON, as all those who are occupied in enlightening themselves and mankind by the advancing of science, are, as they are fellow-labourers, to be viewed also as brethren and fellows of a community, in which it is needful for each to assist the other in promoting the common object of their pursuit; in fine, they are both countrymen and fellow-citizens of the commonwealth of literature. After all, whether there is any ground for this observation of Dr HASSELQUIST or no, it cannot, in neither case, in any degree affect the character of the French merchants who are accustomed to visit Egypt, whether they are said to give French or Latin names to the subjects they see, or whether they take the trouble to learn their Arabic, Turkish, or Coptic names; it could still less have been M. HASSELQUIST's design by any remarks he made, to cast a slur upon a whole nation.

In a word, had M. DE BUFFON read and taken the trouble to understand M. HASSELQUIST's publication, with any other design than that of criticising LINNÆUS and his disciples, he might have easily discovered from it, that HASSELQUIST's manuscripts were seized in Egypt after his death, and afterwards purchased again by the munificence of a great queen, and through the conspicuous love and zeal for science of the same exalted personage, they were ordered to be printed in the manner mentioned in the introduction; and thus consequently, the author himself could not put the finishing hand

to his work; in which case, indeed, he might possibly, either by the help of memory or from his notes, which were lost by his untimely death, have added the description of the interior part of the *giraffe's* horns, which M. DE BUFFON seems to be so very much concerned about. Perhaps, M. HASSELQUIST would also, in order to satisfy M. DE BUFFON, have somewhat abbreviated his account of the *mangouft*; though, as I have mentioned before, it is much more compendious than it is in the *Histoire Naturelle*.

I have without doubt said enough at present, to satisfy a man of M. DE BUFFON's great genius, that even he, with his superior talents, is not incapable of committing blunders, and thus greatly injuring *academicians* of the highest merit: and that if, on the contrary, he should rather evidence that he is touched with compassion for their sufferings, and at the same time happy on every opportunity to vindicate their character when attacked, he would give evident proofs of that generosity and candour which, ought always to go hand in hand with the talents of a great man, and which would most undoubtedly increase to the esteem which every lover of literature entertains for them.

I have already mentioned the *tyger-bosch-kat*, and purposed to describe it in this place, along with the other African animals, from the skin of this creature which I brought home with me; but I find that it has been since so accurately described and delineated from the live subject by Dr FORSTER in the *Philosoph. Transact.* Vol. LXXI. for the year 1781, that with the greatest pleasure I can refer the reader to it.

C H A P. XV.

Journey from Agter Brunjes Hoogte to the two Visch-rivers, and Residence at those Places.

I have already said, at p. 124, that we left Agter Brunjes Hoote, on the 21st of January. In the after-

noon

noon we came to great *Vifch-rivier*, where we again determined to try our fortune in the pursuit of *sea-cows*; for I was resolved not to leave the country, till I had made as accurate an investigation of this large, though not unknown animal, as I had of the *two-horned rhinoceros*. When we had reached a certain spot upon *Vifch-rivier*, we found several farmers from the province we had just left, who had arrived there before us. A husbandman whom they style a *corn-boor*, from the country in the neighbourhood of the Cape-Town, was also in their company. When we saw him first he lay sleeping under a shady tree, by the side of a complete beauty, who was dressed in a light summer dress: there was no wonder then, that a scene so uncommon and romantic appearing on a sudden in a desert, should immediately drive away all those ideas of desolation and wild horror, which the savage and dreary aspect of these plains had begun to excite once again both in mine and my friend's imagination: and I would not have been surety for him, that he would not soon have forgot all his botany, had he permitted himself any longer to be carried away, by the first delightful and charming impressions which the contemplation of so perfect a production in the chief of the three kingdoms of nature, produced on him. When we entered into conversation with them, our voluptuous corn-boor and his beautiful spouse told us, that they had just been paying a visit to their relations at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, where having enjoyed for the space of six months the sweets of the ease and convenience which attend a pastoral life, when compared with the drudgery of that of the husbandman and vine-dresser, they had given up all thoughts of their former occupation, so that they proposed to sell their vineyard and corn-farm near the Cape, and to seek out some spot in these parts, which might answer for carrying on the grazing business.

The conversation on this subject was now interrupted by the arrival of another farmer and a little boy of their party, who told us, that some wild creature, probably a tiger, had immediately before come upon one of the hounds by stealth, while drinking out of the river, and torn it to pieces, close by the very spot, where our informers told us they had lately been bathing, and near

to which they had lain down to take their afternoon's nap, having risen from it only half a minute before. They, as well as we, had only heard the dog give one single squeak; after which it was found quite dead. So that probably the wild beast had before this, lain in ambush for the little boy, in order (as they said) agreeable to its usual custom, to kill him slyly and by stealth, and then, after a short interval, to return again and carry him away.

In the mean while, this incident instantly alarmed us all, and induced us to take to our arms in order to revenge ourselves. Accordingly, several couple of hounds were put upon the scent in a thicket hard by the river side, where the wild beast lay still concealed, while we placed ourselves round about. The hounds, which followed the scent with great keenness, soon drove the tiger out, at about only forty or fifty paces from our best shot who was, a little old farmer, who shot him flying, as it were, viz. while he was springing from the ground. The ball was afterwards discovered to have entered at the upper edge of the anus, and to have passed through the whole length of the body, till at length it came out of the animal's mouth; as a great part of the palate was missing, and the rest of it, hard by the fore teeth, was bloody, without these latter, however, being damaged in any degree. I know not whether this can be explained from any particular position of the animal at that time, or rather from the circumstance of the ball, having gone out of the right line, in consequence of the resistance it met with. On the body of this wild animal we found a little *hippobosca*, totally unknown to naturalists, which they informed me was very commonly found on the carcases of tigers. They also told me, that a particular sort of fly, much larger than this, very probably also of the *hippobosca* kind, subsisted on the body of the lion likewise.

The animals which the colonists and I in this part of Africa name tigers, are of that kind which are described in Tom. IX. Tab. XI. XII. and XIV. of M. DE BUFFON's work, under the names of *panthers* and *leopards*. At the Cape I have also seen several skins of the *ounce* of M. DE BUFFON, which, some of the colonists distinguished from the former by the name of *leopard*, and was so said

to live principally in the mountains, and not to be so common, bold and daring, though still more treacherous and deceitful, than the animal usually called tiger at the Cape, or the *panther* of M. DE BUFFON; to which, however, it is equal in point of size, though the skin is not so beautiful, nor so much in request, as it is more shaggy, and covered with longer hairs, nor is it so much spotted nor so glossy.

Both these kinds, when they happen to fall in the way of six or eight bounds of the common kind, which, indeed, the colonists use for this purpose, are easily caught, or else torn in pieces by them. I saw at one farmer's only at *Gantze-craal*, about fourteen or fifteen tiger furs, as they are called, which were said to have been taken and killed within the space of three years, by the common dogs belonging to the farm; at times, however, a dog or two had been killed in the conflict, or at least had been very much wounded.

I was informed, that a slave who had the charge of his master's cattle, had been attacked unawares and by stealth on the plains between *Tyger-mountain* and the *Cape*, by a tiger, with which he had long struggled and rolled about upon the ground: at length, however, the tiger was overpowered by the slave, who recovered, although he had received some dangerous wounds. This, although bordering on the marvellous, is not altogether incredible; for when the thirst of revenge, or the fear of instant death, is added to a man's natural strength and vigour, he is capable of performing almost supernatural things. I recollect, to have read besides in JONSTON'S *Tbumatographia Naturalis*, that a man of the name of POLYDAMAS, was able, without arms, to kill a lion. The tiger, notwithstanding, which we killed at this place, appeared to me to be rather dangerous to contend with. It was thought to be old and about the common size. I cannot observe in my note-book, whether I had taken any memorandum of the measure; but I think I recollect that the beast was two feet high, but proportionably much longer than a dog of the same height.

Very early in the afternoon, the before-mentioned hunting party went off, and about an hour before dark a herd of *Cassres* arrived. They were within three hun-

dred paces of us, before we observed them, being about one hundred in number, all men, and each of them armed with a few *bassogais*, or a pair of *kirries*. They marched, besides, directly forward towards our waggon, not with the careless walk of common travellers, but with measured steps, as it were; and, in short, as they came nearer to us, with an affected pride and stateliness in their deportment. Upon the whole, we could not well have received a more unexpected visit on this spot, nor one of a nature more alarming; indeed, it produced a visible consternation in several of my Hottentots, at the same time that it puzzled my friend and me, to conceive in what manner we should receive this nation so much at unawares, so as to avoid sharing the unhappy fate which, as I have already mentioned, at page 112 of this vol. attended HEUPPENAER and his company. If we should be attacked, my Hottentots were too few in number, and too cowardly to be trusted to; such of them as were of the race of the Boshies-men, and had accompanied us from *Zondags-rivier*, would probably have assisted them in plundering our waggon, had they found a convenient opportunity; and who knows, but perhaps they were in secret intelligence with the Boshies-men, who were at this time in the service of the Caffres, and were of their party. They had long been urgent with me to leave *Agter Brunjes-boogte*. At least there were hints given me afterwards, that this visit of the Caffres was not by accident, but was the consequence of some intelligence given them by certain Hottentots at *Agter Brunjes-boogte*. However, I had not then sufficient time to enter into such deep speculations on the subject, being entirely employed by the apprehension, lest the party under my command, by the smallest appearance of cowardice or of a mutinous disposition, should stimulate the usual enterprising spirit of the Caffres. I was convinced that my friend and I, mounted on our horses, would have been match for them, in the same manner as the two men were who revenged HEUPPENAER's death; but in our situation, we had not a moment to lose, much less had we any spare time to bring our horses from their pasture. I therefore immediately resolved to carry matters with as high a hand as it was possible for me to assume in our situation,

situation, the rather as I knew from experience, that by this means the Indians might sometimes be kept in awe just like children. Accordingly, I began with my own *Hottentots*, threatening with the most terrible Dutch oaths I could think of, to shoot the first man through the head, who should stir a foot without leave, or once open his mouth to the Caffres; or, in fine, should not, at the least nod, perform what I might think fit to command. Mr IMMELMAN, on his part, taking a handful of bullets, put them into a loaded gun of a very great length which he had brought with him; in the mean time often addressing himself to me, and making it out to be no difficult matter (and the feasibility of which could not be doubted) to kill with it the whole body of Caffres at one shot, in case they should offer to behave in a hostile manner; and at the same time, with a view to give some probability to this gasconade, did not neglect to practise a few manœuvres in the true legerdemain style. While Mr IMMELMAN was thus with his long gun, beyond all doubt, making a tremendous appearance in the eyes of the Caffres, and I was also armed with my gun, and the fiercest mien I could possibly muster up, they came towards us wedged up, as it were, into a close body, with three leaders in their front. A Hottentot interpreter in one of the wings, seemed just going to open with a long harangue; when I suddenly stopped his mouth, by accosting him with a few rough compliments in the Swedish language, and turning my back upon him.

This haughty and uncivil reception, which would only have served to irritate any other than Hottentots and Caffres, on the contrary, from the very beginning, abased their pride, so that they stood like a parcel of orderly, or rather intimidated school-boys, and waited for my questioning them; upon which, in quality of the principal sons of the company, we ordered our interpreter to ask them what nation they were of? From whence they came? and whether they were going? For the purpose of making this examination, I called out JAN SCHEEPER, the cleverest and most intelligent of all my Hottentots, and had the satisfaction to see him fly to me like a flash of lightning; a proof of his obedience, which, indeed, was at this time very agreeable to me; as it was
necessary

necessary in order to excite in the Caffres a high opinion of our authority and power: but the still higher ideas, and even dread which he had conceived of this nation, put his whole frame into such a tremor, that even his teeth chattered together, and rendered him incapable of uttering a single word. This unlooked for cowardly behaviour, threatened to spoil my whole plan; for which cause, both from indignation and in order to disguise the reason of his trembling, I threatened him very hard, and accosted him in the roughest manner. I am not certain, however, whether the Caffres were not more sharp-sighted than I wished them to be, some of them fixed their eyes upon him and laughed.

Whenever the interpreter of the Caffres attempted, which he frequently did, to enter into a private conversation with my Hottentot, I was always on my guard to prevent it. In fine, the account they gave of themselves was, "that they were Caffres from *Konaps-rivier*, and were come hither merely with an intention of meeting with us, and to see whether we had brought with us a great deal of iron and copper to exchange for their cattle; for they knew from report, that we were come from a great distance, and had resided long in these plains."

In the mean time, this proposition of theirs as to the traffic and cattle, had a very suspicious appearance to me, inasmuch as I could not at that time perceive that they had brought any live stock with them; and those which their herdsmen and boys afterwards brought to this place, consisted merely of a few milch cows and young steers, upon which they set an amazing high price, and in all probability, intended them for their own support during their march.

With a view to prevent their sitting down without being previously asked, I delayed not a moment to tell them by means of the interpreters, that they had my leave to sit down, whilst I gave them my answer on the subject of their proposed commerce. Accordingly they sat themselves down in the same order as they came, viz. with the three Chiefs in their front. I enquired notwithstanding, how many of them were captains or commanders; and the three foremost being mentioned by

name:

name us such, I gave each of them a good piece of tobacco; telling them at the same time, that this was the way the company's sons inclined to receive their friends the *Caffre* captains; but that we had already exchanged our iron and copper in these very plains with some other *Caffre* friends; that, however, I supposed that they had not taken their journey in vain, in case they called at *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, where they would get enough of these commodities from the farmers settled there.

When they perceived that, in order to get tobacco, nothing more was requisite than to be a captain, they presented to me several others of the party, as being also *Ku-i'koi*s, or captains, and asked tobacco for them; but the scheme not succeeding, they themselves laughed heartily at the captains of their own creation. Neither did they shew the least inclination to distribute to these pretended chiefs, any part of the presents that had been made them. However, in order to keep the real chiefs in good humour, I likewise gave them afterwards a handful of dry hemp, which they accepted as a valuable present; and mixing it with some tobacco, smoked it with a high relish, while we were talking together. The pipes out of which they smoked, and which were circulated only among the chiefs, had stems about four feet long, from 3-4ths of which the pith had been taken out, but by what means I know not. Where this hollow part of the pipe appeared to terminate, a bowl three inches in length but very narrow, seemed to be fixed at the bottom of the stem, being kept firm and steady with a band or collar, in the same manner as the stays of a mast are in a ship. From the small bore and size of this bowl, one may venture to conclude, that these *Caffres* were but bad smokers compared to the *Hottentots*.

When they heard that we intended to hunt the *sea-cow*, and that these animals were rather uncommon as well as shy in this part of the country, they told us, that near *Konaps-rivier*, the *sea-cows* were seen to come up out of the river in the very middle of the day, and both to sleep and graze in the fields thereabouts, where, in fact, to their great sorrow, these beasts assembled in as great numbers as the pebble-stones I actually saw scattered by the side of *Vijeb-rivier*, on the spot on which we then stood.

stood. Though this comparison was, it must be confessed, in the true Oriental style, yet it is probable, that these animals were really to be found in great numbers about the above-mentioned river; and that they were far from being shy, but grazed and slept on land in open day, as the Caffres informed us; for, in consequence of the uncultivated state in which they were, and particularly as they had not the use of fire-arms, these people must of necessity be forced to give way to animals of such strength and magnitude.

As soon as it grew dark, the Caffres stood up, and without any kind of order, or the ceremony of taking leave, went towards a large bush, at the distance of a musket-shot from us, where they made a great fire, by the side of which they took up their repose for the night. Soon after we heard a hideous roaring near the spot, and we supposed that it proceeded from some beast they were killing. Accordingly Mr IMMELMAN and I hastened thither to see it, and found the beast, which had been felled to the ground, lying on its right side, with its fore-leg bound over its head; neither was any other binding or fastening requisite, as the animal lay tolerably still, though not yet dead; while five or six people stood by, and made several incisions into its stomach with their hassagais, which they afterwards took out through an opening they made for that purpose in the chest. I know not whether this way of slaughtering beasts is practised by any other nation; it certainly seemed to be a very cruel one, though while this business was dispatching, a good deal of mirth and laughter appeared to pass between those who had the management of it. The whole of this business, however, did not take up much time, the animal's pain terminating with its life in about two minutes after the first incision had been made. Immediately after this they set about flaying the beast piecemeal, with the assistance of their hassagais, and cutting the hide into slices of different sizes and forms. These were also intended to be eaten, as I afterwards learned from one of my Hottentots, who the next day got a broiled piece of it, in exchange for a little tobacco; and assured me, that when an ox or cow's hide was well dressed,

fed, viz. first boiled in water and then in milk, it is by no means a contemptible dish.

While we were standing to see the beast slaughtered, we observed that all the spears and hassagais, except those that were used in killing the animal, were piled up together in the middle just before one of the chiefs, who was now noticed to be very busy in issuing out his orders; these orders being without delay put in execution by those who looked after the fire. Indeed, they did not appear to pay the smallest regard to our being present: however, as it was grown very dark, we thought it most prudent to make a short stay. We had scarcely got home, before their interpreter came along with two Caffres to borrow our porridge-pot. This message our Hottentots interpreted to us in a sorrowful tone, adding, that the Caffres usually kept what they borrowed, else we must have a (*rusje*, or) dispute with them. As our porridge pot was absolutely a treasure to us, and was particularly useful to our Hottentots, for boiling and melting their fat, &c. and the Caffres probably could not have withstood the temptation of keeping it, I thought it was as well to have a *rusje* with them at first as at last. I endeavoured to pacify them however, by a civil answer; and sent them word, that if the company's sons had two porridge pots, they would certainly lend one of them to their friends the Caffres; but that we were then hungry, and were going to dress our victuals that very night: to which I added, that some skill was necessary in dressing victuals in our pot, so that they might not be spoiled; for which reason, I would myself take care to have their meat dressed for them the next morning, as soon as ever they should send it to my Hottentots. It is true, they allowed themselves to be put off with this compliment; nevertheless, we could not tell whether they might not take it in their heads to send a shower of darts amongst us in the night, before we were aware of it, through the tilt of our waggon, in the same manner as happened to HEUPPENAER, whose story I have related at page 112 of this volume; therefore we fortified the back part of our waggon with our saddles, and the skins of beasts, and made a fence on the sides with bundles of paper, clothes, and pieces of dried rhinoceroses hides. At each end of
the

the waggon two guns, with their muzzles pointed in a proper direction, were placed, so that we could instantly, on the first rupture, discharge four pieces; besides, with a view to increase the alarm and terror of the enemy, we were then, as well as at the first arrival of the Caffres on the preceding day, prepared to throw, if necessary, powder-horns and large cartouches into the fire, which was about eight or nine paces distant from us: we were likewise on this occasion to have filled our pockets in all haste with loose gun-powder, in order to keep up from our fire-arms, a brisker, though less effectual fire, and a continued report, in order to frighten the enemy, and keep him at a distance. Our horses and oxen, which, according to our constant custom, were tied to the waggon all around it, we considered as a kind of intrenchment, and from the shyness of our horses in particular, had reason to expect previous notice of any attack that might be made; so that upon the whole we slept pretty secure! and though, even after such ample preparations for our defence, we thought ourselves happy to escape being attacked by the enemy, yet still we could not help wishing that we had had it in our power to entertain our friends with an account of a skirmish with the Caffres.

I cannot help thinking, however, that the instances we have of the deceitful dispositions of the barbarians in general, and of the sudden transitions which are at times made by them from a state of peace and tranquillity to that of rapine and slaughter, are sufficient to justify all our suspicions, and the precautions we took with regard to them: and, indeed, I am inclined to consider the being massacred by these fellows, as one species of the sudden death, against which we are taught to pray in the Litany. By a letter from Mr IMMELMAN, dated from the Cape, 25th of March, 1781, I have lately been informed the Caffres were at that time laying waste every thing they could meet with in the districts belonging to the Christians: among others PRINTSLOO, my old worthy host, and the first I had at *Agter Bruntjes-hoogte*, had had the mortification to see his new house burnt to the ground by these barbarians, after having lost his numerous herds of cattle, out of all which he had been able to save six oxen only. A woman, of the name of KOETSJE, had

with

with much difficulty escaped the pursuit of these barbarians, having been forced to leave one of her children behind her which had been pierced through the body with seven hassagais. The loss of the Christians in the article of cattle, is said to amount to twenty-one thousand; while, on the contrary, they could not meet with the third part of that number of cattle belonging to the Caffres, who, Mr IMMELMAN tells me, were led on by the Captains MOSAN and KOBÄ. I cannot say whether it was either of these that paid us a visit, as I neglected to take down their names, and therefore cannot remember them so as to be certain of them. Just after midnight it rained, with thunder and lightning.

At ten o'clock the next morning, (being the 22d) the whole party of Caffres went away without taking leave, after having, under pretence of selling a milch cow, endeavoured to get a sight of all the iron and copper which they supposed I had brought with me; however, in order to avoid temptation, I shewed them nothing but plants and insects, which I told them were the only commodities I had, except the valuable consideration I had offered them (and they had refused) for their cow, which we otherwise, on account of the store we set by the milk, would have been glad to have bargained with them for.

After this they bent their course towards *Agter Bruntjes-boogte*, and were met on the road by three farmers, viz. JACOB POTGIETER, with his son PHILIP or FLIP, and his son-in-law FRANS LABESKANJE, who were coming with 3 Hottentots, according to agreement, to strengthen our party, and to enable us the better to block up and shoot the sea-cows.

As the colonists are strictly prohibited from carrying on any kind of commerce with the Hottentots and Caffres, and as besides these peasants, not without reason, suspected the Caffres' designs, apprehending at the same time, that they would at least strike a terror by their arrival, in those whom they left at home behind them, they endeavoured at first to dissuade them in a friendly manner from going to the town; and afterwards had recourse to threats, which succeeded better; assuring them, that if they did not go their way peaceably, they would make a great havock among them with their fire-arms; which

indeed, being on horseback, they might do without danger, by successively dispatching them in small parties, in the same manner as I mentioned at p. 104 and 112 of this volume, and to which the Caffres were no strangers.

As to the outward appearance of these *Caffres*, I found them in general not so tall as the *Gonaquas Hottentots*, and the Caffres I saw with that people; neither were they nearly so much ornamented with copper and beads: they were, however, full as robust and manly.

While I waited the arrival of the three farmers, and there being no particular natural subject about this spot that required peculiar attention, I set about digging in the earth after antiquities. I had before this, during my first residence near *Groote Visch-rivier*, observed heaps of stones larger than those few I had seen near *Krakeel rivier*, and composed of stones equal to them in bulk. They were from three to four feet and a half high, and the bases of them measured from six to ten feet in diameter. They likewise lay ten, twenty, fifty, two hundred paces, and even farther asunder, but always between two particular points of the compass, and of course in right lines, and those constantly running parallel to each other.

I found these heaps of stones in a considerable number also, and knew from the account I had from the colonists on this subject, that they extended in this manner several days journey from this spot, in a northern direction, through uncultivated plains, into the *Sneeſe Vlakten*, as they are denominated, where they are said to occur in a still greater number of parallel lines. These monuments are therefore considered as undeniable proofs, that this tract of country was inhabited formerly by a race of people, who were more numerous and powerful than either the Hottentots or Caffres, whose sepulchral rites, as well as other customs, and above all their inconceivable sloth and idleness, are too well known for them to be suspected of such great, and, to all appearance, useless undertakings.

In the mean time, with a view to find out the intention of these heaps of stones being collected together, many conjectures were formed with various degrees of probability: thus much, however, is certain, that they could not

not have been collected together by any other than slaves. But whether this was done by a people bending beneath the yoke of superstition, or else under that of monarchy or of an oligarchy, I shall not pretend to determine. In the first case it is probable, that they imagined themselves bound to make offerings like these, of useless toil and trouble, to their tyrannical gods; or in the latter case, were forced to pay this tribute to the pride and vanity of some tyrant, who even after death, for the sake of immortalizing and gaining vain and imaginary honours for his dust, contrived in this manner to waste the strength, and exhaust the forces of his surviving subjects. Under the influence of which soever of these causes the stones have been accumulated, they are undoubtedly the relics of some early period, in which, whether smarting under the scourge of superstition or that of a tyrant, some flourishing and populous nation has dwindled away to a few scattered herdsmen, or else has been degraded to the present race of Caffres, Hottentots, Boshies-men and savages.

In some few heaps of stones, I observed that the foundations only had been laid, or perhaps the stones had been carried away, till the remainder was level with the surface of the earth. As these appeared most convenient for the purpose of exploring the ground, Mr. IMMELMAN and I rode almost 3 miles to one of them, which was in the vicinity of *Koks-craal*, with a view as I said before, to look for antiquities, or any relics whatever of ancient times, concerning which I was in hopes of getting information.

A bar of iron, two feet in length, which we had taken with us in order to dig up bulbs and roots with it in the course of our journey, was the only instrument we had fit for our purpose; and we had not an opportunity of taking any more hands with us by way of assistants, than the youngest of our Boshies-men, a stout, willing, and clever young fellow. We met, however, with insurmountable impediments, in large stones piled up close together, so that with our united strength we could not penetrate more than two feet deep into the centre of the heap, and that not without much labour and trouble; and at last found only some rotten bits of trees, and something that had the appearance of a piece of a bone

mouldered to dust. The Hottentot who till now, induced by the tobacco which we promised him, had assisted us, though not without a great many sneers, and ridiculing us in his own language which we did not understand, at last fairly burst out a laughing, and began likewise, with an air of great indignation, and moralizing on the matter, to turn his back upon the work. To this may be added, that this district was very much noted for harbouring lions; and that our horses, which we had turned out upon the pastures, with their heads and legs tied together, had strayed away, and were missing a long time before we could find them again among the bushes on this dangerous spot.

We got home in the dusk to our waggon, and were not a little pleased with the punctuality of the three farmers spoken of before, who were now come, agreeably to their promise, to assist us in hunting the sea-cow: though at the same time I was then, and still am exceedingly sorry at having missed the opportunity of fully exploring, and with a sufficient degree of accuracy, the heaps of stones occurring in these parts; an investigation which would probably throw much light on the nature of mankind in general, and more particularly on its pristine condition in this part of the world. There was a vague report propagated here, that a farmer on a spot near the district of Camdebo, had found some ancient stone ruins. I shall make no comment upon the story; yet, together with the heaps of stones so often mentioned, it forms a subject worthy of a particular and close investigation: and this could not be done more effectually by any one than Major GORDON, who being a member of the regency at the Cape, and a man of great genius and an inquisitive turn of mind, would certainly acquire as great a claim to the gratitude of the public by his successful labours on this subject, as he has already by unfolding the history of that remarkable animal, the *camelopardalis*. *Jacob Kok's-craal*, which I have before-mentioned, and put down in my map, is a place which is in general passable with waggons; and from the situation of the mountains near it, and other circumstances, is said to be the key, as it were, to the northern part of Africa. It is said to have obtained the appellation it now bears from

the circumstance of JACOB KOK, my friend at *Zeeke-rivier*, who, with several others, had intended to make a long journey a great way up the country, having been detained for several months by an uncommon flooding of the water; which indeed was so great, that the force of the stream even prevented them in their attempts to cross it on a float of wood. On this, as well as on the preceding night, we had thunder and rain.

On the next morning, being the 23d, we set off from hence, in order to go to another part of the river. This day I for the first time perceived that my lazy Boshies-men were able to run faster and hold it out longer, than I should otherwise have ever imagined. The farmers, who had of late joined our party, and who were better acquainted with this circumstance than we, as well as with what might be expected from these people, forced some of them to carry our arms, and at the same time follow us as fast as we rode; our pace being generally an ordinary trot, which we at times changed to a gallop, for several hours together, over various kinds of ground. Once or twice, we made a little halt; but twice at other times, having taken our arms from them and carried them ourselves, we rode quicker, by which means we soon got somewhat before them, but did not stop long before they again came up with us. In short, I then found, as well as afterwards, that even the oldest among these fellows would run twenty miles in the space of three or four hours, without appearing to be much fatigued by it. The farmers besides assured me, that they were acquainted with Boshies-men, who could continue in this manner all day long; and had thus ran down, and killed with their own hands, many elks or hart-beests, especially when these animals had been wounded before. Indeed, most of the people belonging to this nation are obliged, for their support, to acquire this swiftness of foot; to which likewise, their habits of life, and their education from their infancy, necessarily disposes them.

About evening, having lost our way several times, we passed a number of bye-roads to a pit in the river, which the farmers, our new guides, knew that the sea-cows often frequented. On this account, all the different roads, by which these animals might come up from the

river, were beset by us separately, our hunting-party consisting altogether of seven persons; viz. five of us Christians, along with my Hottentot and another the farmers had. Besides this, the other Hottentots were ordered to go to the windward and the more open places, and by cracking their whips and making other noises, to frighten the animal and drive it towards us, as soon as it should appear: in consequence of which steps we judged, that, when at length obliged to go on shore in search of its food, it must unavoidably come to the hiding-place of some one or other of the hunters. Every one of these places were just by the edge of the river, between the reeds which grew on the dry parts of the river, or on those parts which the water had left, and at the same time close by the very narrow paths which the animal had made for itself at each place: in consequence of which disposition of our company, it could not possibly pass more than six inches, or a foot at most, from the muzzle of the sportsman's gun. Our dependence was wholly upon two accidental circumstances, viz. that our guns would not miss fire, and that the shot would prove mortal. In the former case, the sportsman must have without doubt paid for his rashness with his life; though in the latter case he had reason to expect, from instances of what others had experienced, that the fire, as well as the report from the gun, and the ball itself, would confuse and stun the creature to such a degree, as to prevent its immediately advancing towards its enemy.

The borders of the pit, which we then surrounded, were in most places perpendicular and steep, and the pit itself was almost three quarters of a mile in length: but my situation, and that of my fellow-traveller, happened to be at about thirty or forty paces distance from each other. To these very places also, after we had waited an hour and a half at them, in the most profound silence, the enormous animals did not fail to repair. They had got scent of the Hottentots while on the other side of the river, and now evidenced by their swimming up and down and blowing themselves, as well as by a short but sharp and piercing noise something between grunting and neighing, that they were not without suspicion of these passes. I imagine both Mr IMMELMAN as well as myself felt his heart
beat

beat rather harder than common, each of us expecting to have a bout every moment with a huge enormous animal, which we knew had given evidence of its being able to bite a man asunder. Yet we were each of us now and then no less afraid, lest the other should have the honour of killing game of such importance. The *hippopotamus*, however, left us, and, as we were afterwards told, appeared in the same manner, where the farmers were stationed; notwithstanding which, we at that very moment heard it fired at by one of the Hottentots.

The dismal darkness of the night, and the glittering of the Hottentot's gun, as well as the loudness of the report from it, occasioned by the weight of the charge, and the vibrations of the echo lengthening the sound along the neighbouring chain of mountains, all tended to compose a most awful and superb sight, which was still increased by the hope of seeing an animal fall superior in bulk to the elephant. This sublime sight was immediately followed by a whimsical sort of farce performed by a troop of baboons, which, by their calling and answering each other along a strait line, we discovered to be encamped on a steep rocky mountain in the neighbourhood, with regular out-posts or guards on the trees on each side of it. After about two minutes interval, silence again took place till two o'clock, when the other Hottentot fired his gun, and another alarm, though of shorter continuance, went through the baboons out-posts and head-quarters.

The next morning, for which we ardently longed in order to satisfy our curiosity, our Hottentot sportsmen informed us of the following particulars concerning the adventures of the night. Enveloped in darkness, covered up to the eyes in reeds, and overshadowed with branches of trees, they could only get a transient glimpse of the animal, and in consequence could not answer for their shots having taken effect: and one of them confessed, that he was a little stupified, as he could not well see what he was doing; and on the same account fired his gun too early, before the animal had well arisen from the water: the other, indeed, had had an opportunity, both with the shot and ball which made up the charge, of striking the animal as it passed him; but he could not see

see which part of the animal presented itself before the muzzle of his gun. As soon as he had fired, he slipped off, and immediately afterwards heard the beast betake itself to the water. The other Hottentots had noticed one of these animals, probably a different one from this, run up on a shallow along the side of the river, and thus escape, without their being able to prevent it. After this we remained here till the afternoon, in hopes that the wounded animals would die and rise to the top of the water, but we staid in vain; and it probably would have been to as little purpose, had we waited still longer, as there grew by the edge of the river a great number of trees to the roots of which it is said, these creatures, make themselves fast, in the agonies of death, by means of their long and crooked tusks. Supposing on the other hand, that these two sea-cows were but slightly wounded, they would be careful how they made their appearance; and, indeed, in all probability, it would have been a dangerous service to the sportsmen who should have ventured to follow them any farther. Besides, the water had now, in the space of a few hours, risen considerably, and had overflowed many spots fit for lying in ambush; on which account we departed to another hippopotamus-pit, less than this.

Here also we laid, by way of snare, a large blunderbuss, which the farmers had brought with them for that purpose; the Hottentots occupied one post, Mr IMMELMAN and LABESKÄNJE guarded another; the oldest of the farmers, POTGIETER, with his son FLIP, stationed themselves at the third, and placed me in the middle of them. Just in this place, the banks of the river were of a considerable height, and the river itself was dried up, near an extensive shallow, where it was spread out into a little plain covered with pebble-stones and gravel. We three then set ourselves down close by each other's side, in a path made by the sea-cows, making ourselves pretty sure, as the place was flat, and consequently it was light here, of being able, if any hippopotamus should happen to come upon the shallow and look about it, to see it plain enough to kill it with a volley of three shot. But, to the great endangering of our lives, we, on a sudden, found the animal much quicker in its motions, as well as bolder

bolder than we had thought it: for while I was sitting half asleep and meditating on the subject, struck with the consideration, that although we, with our guns, had at that present moment the dominion over Job's *Leviathan* or *Behemoth*, yet on the other hand, the flies, or small musquitoes, had the dominion over us, (so much, indeed, that I was forced to wrap my face up in a handkerchief,) a sea-cow came out of the river, rushing upon us, with a hideous cry, as swift as an arrow out of a bow; at the same time, I heard the farmer call out, "*Heer Jesus!*" but luckily at the very instant he discharged his piece, which flashing full in the animal's face, contributed, perhaps, more than the ball, to make it start back, when setting up another cry, it threw itself into the water again with as great precipitation as it came out.

At this I was not a little alarmed; yet what is very singular, not at the danger, (which was indeed real,) of being trampled under foot, or being bitten asunder by the beast, but in consequence of my fears, (which were only imaginary,) of being drowned: for the rattling noise, arising from the creature's rushing out of the water and along the stoney beach, immediately suggested to me the idea, that the river had on a sudden overflowed its banks; a supposition to which I was the more inclined, as I knew that this accident happens oftener here than at *Gaurits-rivier*, (for an account of which I must refer the reader to Vol. I. page 181:) and as the *hippopotamus*, when it is newly come up out of the water, and is wet and slimy, is said to glisten in the moon-shine like a fish, it is no wonder then, that as soon as I took my handkerchief from before my eyes, it should seem to me, at so near a view as I had of it, like a high column of water, which appeared to threaten to carry us off and drown us in a moment: for which cause, leaving both my guns and my brother sentinels behind me, I ran, or rather flew towards the higher ground; but as, just at this spot, I was prevented by the steepness of the river's banks from ascending the heights, and nevertheless finding that neither my companions nor myself were drowned, it ran in my head, for the space of several seconds, that we were all of us either dreaming or delirious. The farmer's son had fallen sound asleep, and still continued so: as to the

the farmer himself, who, panting and breathless, every now and then looked up to heaven, and at the same time, with much awkwardness and bustle, was attempting to make his escape, I made all the haste I could to disentangle him from a large wrapper, which, as well on account of his gout as by way of keeping off the flies, he had wrapped round his legs. I then asked him what course the water had taken when it overflowed; and he, after a considerable pause, answered only by asking me in his turn, if I was not mad; upon which I was almost ready to put the same question to myself: and even at last, when all this was unriddled to me, could not avoid doubting the truth of it, till I found the farmer's gun was actually discharged; for the rattling among the stones and the squashing in the water, occasioned by the sea-cow, was what I first heard, and what made me take to my legs; so that I did not attend in the least either to the report of the gun or the cry of the animal, though these latter appeared to the rest of our party the most terrible; so much, indeed, that they made Mr IMMELMAN, and the farmer's son-in-law, fly from their post, though they had seen nothing of all that had happened, and could not easily have come to any harm.

We now concluded the chase, and spent the rest of the night in laughing at each other; in chatting and forming various conjectures as to the precipitation and impetuous fury of the sea-cow, which, however, was probably as much alarmed and frightened as we ourselves could possibly be: we even smoked a couple of pipes, while we listened to the roaring of the lion, and waited for the approach of the morning. Several Hottentots then told us, that shortly after the noise and tumult we have been describing had ceased, they had seen a sea-cow, running out of the river towards that side of it which was unguarded.

On the 25th, from some traces of the sea-cows which we found in the dust near another spot, we concluded that many of these huge amphibious animals had lately taken up their quarters in a certain pit thereabouts, which we accordingly prepared to lay siege to it in every possible way.

In

In the mean time, we saw a young lion make its escape into a close thicket, on the side of this same pit, where it would be perfectly safe from us and our hounds. Not much approving of this animal's being so near a neighbour to us, we thought it prudent for several of us marksmen to be together at each hiding-place; at the same time ordering our Hottentots, partly by making a noise and uproar, and partly by means of making large fires, to frighten the sea-cows from attempting any of the other passes.

These animals had probably been beset in the same manner several times before, as this night we hardly heard any thing of them. In the mean time, however, we flattered ourselves, that by continuing to block them up, we should at least by starving them, oblige them to quit their asylum, and expose themselves on the land to the fire of our guns.

On the 26th also we were on the search after these animals, between the hours of ten and eleven in the forenoon, and also just before dusk, though upon a quite different plan from what we had before, as we meant now to hit them on their snouts the instant they should stick them up within the reach of our guns out of the water, in order to take breath, or rather, (as it is not improperly called by the colonists) to blow themselves. In order that the shot might prove mortal, we were obliged, however, on this occasion, to direct it in such a manner, that the ball should pass through the cavity of the nose into the brain. It was merely upon this plan, that we went out after the sea-cows, before we arrived at *Agter Bruntjes boogte*, and were strengthened by the farmer's party. But we always found these animals too shy, to allow us to put our designs in execution: for although in those places where they had not been frightened or wounded, they will often in the middle of the day raise their heads and part of their bodies above the surface of the water, they at this time hardly ventured to put one of their nostrils out of it, in order to breathe almost imperceptibly; and this only for the most part, in those spots in which they were sheltered from us by the hanging branches of trees. Notwithstanding this disadvantageous situation, they appeared in consequence of the acuteness of their smell, still

to beware of us, especially when we were to windward of them; as in that case they instantly withdrew to another part.

The same night, we betook ourselves again to our posts; and in the dusk of the evening, I saw a little animal, which probably was an otter, stick its head up out of the water and blow itself a little, suffering itself for a few moments to be borne away by the current.

At half an hour after eight, it being already very dark, a sea-cow began at intervals to put its head above the water, and utter a sharp, piercing, and, as it were, very angry cry, which appeared to be between grunting and neighing. Perhaps this cry may be best expressed by the words, *heurb burb*, *beob-beob*: the two first being uttered slowly, in a hoarse but sharp and tremulous sound, similar to the grunting of other animals; while the third, or compound word, is sounded very quick, and somewhat like the neighing of a horse. It is true, it is impossible to express these inarticulate sounds in writing to any great degree of perfection; but, perhaps, one may make nearer approaches to it, than to the guttural sounds of the Hottentot language.

At eleven o'clock, the same, or else some other *hippopotamus* came, and in the same manner visited the posts we occupied; he did not, however, venture to come up, though to our great mortification we heard him come and nibble the boughs which hung over the surface of the water, together with a little grass and a few low shrubs which grew scattered up and down on the inside of the banks of the river. We were, notwithstanding very hopeful, that this manner of living would not long suffice animals, one of which only needed almost a larger portion than a whole team of oxen. Thus far at least is certain, that if one should calculate the consumption of provisions made by a sea-cow, from the size of its fauces, and from that of its body and belly, which hangs almost down to the ground, as well as from the quantity of grass which I have frequently observed to have been eaten by one of these animals in the spots, whither it has come over night to graze, the amount would seem almost incredible.

On

On the 27th, we met with the misfortune of one of our Hottentots having carelessly struck the muzzle of his gun against a rock, so that it went off and shot him through the foot, at the same time wounding several others in the legs with the splinters of the ball (a composition of lead and tin) which was split in pieces against the rock. Provisions being now scarce with us, we were under the necessity, in the day-time, of riding a considerable way round about the neighbourhood in search of game. Besides having had an opportunity of giving chase, *en passant*, though without success, to a *lion* and a *hyena*, we had the good fortune to catch a young wood-pig, and to shoot a hart-beest; but our Hottentots going only two hours afterwards to fetch off the flesh of the latter, the eagles had already consumed the greatest part of it. In the afternoon it thundered, and we passed the following night at the same posts as we occupied on the preceding night, the sea-cows acting much in the same manner as before.

After sun-rise, on the 28th, just as we were about to go from our posts home to our waggons, there came a female hippopotamus with her calf, from some other pit or river, to take up her lodgings in that which we were then blockading. While she was waiting at a rather steep part of the river's banks, and looking back after the calf, which was lame, and of course came on but slowly, she received a shot in her side, upon which she instantly plunged into the river, but was not mortally wounded; for FLIP, the drowsiest of all sublunary beings, who had shot her, and at that instant could scarcely be awakened by two Hottentots, was still half asleep when he fired his piece; and happy was it for him, that the enormous beast did not make towards his hiding- or rather sleeping-place, and send him into the other world to sleep for ever. In the mean time his shot was so far of service, that one of my Hottentots ventured to seize the calf and hold it fast by its hind-legs, till the rest of the hunting-party came to his assistance. The calf was then bound fast, and with the greatest joy borne in triumph to our waggons; though while they were taking it over a shallow near the river, the Hottentots were very much afraid, lest the wounded mother, and the other

sea-cows, should be induced by the cries of the calf to come to its rescue: the creature, as long as it was bound, making a noise similar to that of a hog that is going to be killed, or is stuck fast between two posts. The sound, however, proceeding from the hippopotamus calf, was more shrill and harsh. This young animal showed also a considerable degree of strength in attempting to get loose, and was found to be altogether unmanageable and unwieldy; it was already three feet and a half long, and two feet high; although the Hottentots supposed it was not more than a fortnight, or at most three weeks old. When at length it was turned loose, it ceased crying; and when the Hottentots had passed their hands several times over its nose, in order to accustom it to their effluvia, it directly began to take to them.

I made a drawing of this calf, while in life, a copy of which is inserted in the Swedish Transact. for 1778, and also in Plate IV. of this volume. It was then killed, dissected, and eaten up in less than three hours time. The cause of this quick dispatch was in part the warmth of the weather, and partly our being without any other fresh provisions. The dried skin, which I brought home with me, is about the thickness of the sole of a thin shoe, and at the same time very stiff. Notwithstanding these disadvantages, I have got it stuffed for the cabinet of the Royal Academy, so as to have a tolerable resemblance to the living animal, only the belly could not be sufficiently distended. For this reason, the drawing taken by M. ALLAMAND from a stuffed hippopotamus calf, and afterwards copied in M. DE BUFFON's Supplement, must unavoidably be faulty, both as it is too lean, and the toes or hoofs at too great distance from each other. The eyes, besides, are drawn too large, and the same may without doubt be said of the figures given of the adult hippopotamus in the same place. We found the fat and flesh of this calf, as flabby as might have been expected from its want of age, and consequently not near so good as that of the old *sea-cows*; of which I found the flesh tender, and the fat of a taste like marrow, or at least not so greasy and strong as other fat. It is on this account, also, that the colonists consider the flesh and fat of the sea-cow, as the wholesomest meat that can be

be eaten; particularly the gelatinous part of the feet, when properly dressed, being considered as a great delicacy. The dried tongues of these animals are also thought to be a rare and savoury dish, even at the Cape. Upon my return to Sweden, I had the honour to supply his Majesty's table with a dried sea-cow's tongue, two feet and eight inches in length. As to shape, the tongue of a full-grown hippopotamus is very blunt at the tip, and is, indeed, broadest at that part; if, at the same time, it tapers off towards one side, and is marked with *lobes*, as I was told it is, this circumstance may, perhaps, be owing to the friction it suffers against the teeth, towards the side on which the animal principally chews; at least some remains of this oblique shape were to be discovered on the dried tongue I have mentioned.

There are some stiff reddish brown hairs on the skin of the hippopotamus calf which I had stuffed for the Royal Academy, which are from a quarter to half an inch long, some also on the inside of the ears, and others about the nose and the back part of the neck; but they grow so scattered and thin, as to be at the distance of 1-8th, or even half an inch from each other. There are likewise hairs upon the back like the former, only they are still more thinly scattered and shorter; these were longest on the edges of the tail, as I formerly observed in the description I gave of this animal in the Swedish Transactions, though they have since fallen off during the stuffing of the animal. The remainder of the skin is quite bare of hairs. The tail itself is flattened at the sides, and consequently the edges or sharp parts of it appear upwards and downwards, like the tail of the rhinoceros.

The tusks, or dog teeth are visible on the calf here described, already grown to the length of half an inch; but those of the full grown sea-cows weigh, by KOLBE's account ten pounds. This assertion is, however, called in question, criticized by M. DE LA CAILLE, at page 349, who asserts, that they weigh barely three pounds. M. DE BUFFON again, Tom. XII. page 38, says, that the weight of the grinders is upwards of 3 pounds, and that the tusks are each of them from twelve to sixteen inches long, and weigh twelve or thirteen pounds. On the o-

ther hand, though I have actually had an opportunity of seeing a great many very large sea-cow-teeth, yet I find that one of the largest size which I had brought home with me and which I presented to the Royal Academy of Sciences, weighs no more than six pounds nine ounces, and is twenty-seven inches long, measured by the inside of its curvature; and consequently about twice the length, and at the same time not half the weight of that M. DE BUFFON mentions. It is therefore to be expected, that this illustrious author will excuse my presumption in suspecting the accuracy of his account, the rather as M. DAUBENTON himself, at page 62 of the same Volume, states the length of a dog tooth of the hippopotamus to be twenty-six inches, and consequently twice the length of what M. DE BUFFON affirms. I have not as yet weighed a grinder of one of these animals; at present, however, I cannot help suspecting, whether M. DE BUFFON can find any that exceed the weight of three pounds: for an elephant's grinder, which I brought home with me as a compliment to the cabinet of the Royal Academy, weighs four pounds and a half, and is nine inches in breadth, but yet, judging from the eye, was at least three times as large in every dimension as any grinder of a hippopotamus, with which I compared it, and of which I have had an opportunity of seeing a great many, in several skulls, in various places on the banks of *Visch-rivier*, being the relics of sea-cows which the farmers had killed there at different times. From what has been said it is likewise evident, that KOLBE is in this respect chiefly to be depended upon. M. DE BUFFON is, however, in the right, when he asserts, l. c. p. 48, that KOLBE took the figures of his animals from other people, and composed most of his descriptions from memory, so that there is little dependence to be placed upon them.

So large is the mouth of the hippopotamus, that though a full third of its enormous tusks above-mentioned in the lower jaw, as well as several of the fore-teeth which project forwards, keep clear of the gums, yet they are not visible except when the animal opens his mouth.

The

The skin of the full grown hippopotamus has a great resemblance to that of the rhinoceros, but is rather thicker. Whips made of this hide are also stronger, and, (after being used some time,) are more flexible than those made of the skin of the rhinoceros generally are, though they are not so transparent as these latter are when new.

The hippopotamus, feeds entirely on herbs and grass, a circumstance of which Father LOBO informs us; and which may partly be inferred from what I have already mentioned on this subject, as well as from the drawing of the stomach belonging to the *fetus* of a hippopotamus given in Messrs DE BUFFON and DAUBENTON's elegant work. I therefore do not consider it as very probable, that these animals, agreeably to the assertions of M. DE BUFFON, page 93, or of DAMPIER in his voyage, should hunt after fish in order to feed upon them; especially as in some of the rivers in the southern part of Africa, where the sea-cows are seen daily and in great numbers, there is not a fish to be seen; and in others only a few *bastard springers*, as they call them, (*cyprinus gonorynchus*) which are scarcely so big as a common herring. It is said, that a small species of carp is still seldomer to be found here. It is true, that the hippopotamus sometimes frequents the mouths of the rivers here, which abound with sea-fish, and even at times the sea itself: we know, however, that these huge quadrupeds are, notwithstanding this, obliged to go from thence on the dry land in search of food. Nor is it probable that they can drink the sea-water; as an instance was told me to the contrary in the case of a hippopotamus, which, having been disturbed in the rivers, had taken refuge in the sea, and was yet obliged to go ashore every night and drink fresh water from a well in the neighbourhood, till at last it was killed by some people who lay in ambush for it there. That the hippopotamuses really lived in salt-water, I have seen evident proofs at the mouth both of *Kromme* and *Camtour* rivers, especially in the latter, on my journey homewards; where many of these animals blowed themselves in open day-light, and thrust their heads up above the water; and one of them particularly, which had been wounded by an ill directed shot on the nose, neighed from rage and resentment. In *Krakama-*

ma I saw manifest traces on the sea-shore, of a hippopotamus which had come from the sea, but had retired thither again immediately. That very attentive navigator Captain BRUTZ told me, that on the eastern coast of Africa he had often seen sea-horses (meaning probably the hippopotamus) raise their heads above the surface of the water, in order to blow themselves and neigh. I have been led to be rather circumstantial on this head, as Mr ADANSON has been pleased, in his *Voyage au Senegal*, to limit the abode of the hippopotamus to the fresh water rivers only in Africa; and M. DE BUFFON has taken upon him to support this opinion, and to create a suspicion of the truth of KOLBE's testimony to the contrary.

An old experienced huntsman informed me, that he had once seen two hippopotamuses copulate, which they did in the same manner as common cattle. On this occasion the beasts stood in a shallow part of the river, where the water reached up to their knees.

BUFFON's account of the size of the largest of the two sea cows measured by ZERENGHI, (Tom. XII. page 31,) was as follows: The length sixteen feet nine inches, the girt fifteen feet, the height six feet and a half, the opening of the mouth two feet four inches wide, and the tusks were above a foot long, clear of the sockets.

The method of taking the hippopotamus consists (besides shooting it) in digging pits for it in those parts by which the animal passes in his road to and from the river; but this plan is peculiar to the Hottentots, and is only made use of by them in the rainy season, as the ground in summer is too hard for that purpose. It is alledged that they have never succeeded in killing this huge water animal with poisoned darts, though this method of killing game is practised with advantage by the Hottentots in killing both the elephant and rhinoceros. The colonists, likewise, were not wholly unacquainted with the method M. HASSELQUIST mentions, as being common in Egypt, viz. to strew as many pease or beans on the ground as the animal can possibly eat, by which means it bursts its belly and dies. But as this is a very expensive method, and they can usually have this animal for a single charge of powder and a lead and tin ball, sent
in

in a proper direction, they principally and indeed almost solely have recourse to this cheaper expedient.

The sea-cow is probably not so quick in its pace on land as the generality of the larger quadrupeds, though perhaps it is not altogether so slow and heavy as M. DE BUFFON, l. c. page 39, describes it to be; as both the Hottentots and colonists consider it as dangerous to meet a hippopotamus out of the water, especially, as report says, they had experienced a recent instance of one of these animals, which, from certain circumstances, was imagined to be in rut, having for several hours, pursued a Hottentot, who found it very difficult to escape. M. KLOCKNER establishes this opinion by inserting a story to this effect related by one MARIAS.

The country people did not entertain the same opinion of the medicinal virtues of the hippopotamus, as they did of the particular parts of the elephant and rhinoceros; excepting one colonist, who thought he had discovered the *os petrosum* of this animal, reduced to powder, and taken in a quantity that would lie on the point of a knife, was excellent in convulsions, and particularly in the convulsions (*Stuypen*) of children. That the flesh is considered very wholesome food, I have already mentioned.

Having already exceeded the limits I had prescribed to myself, I do not propose to dwell particularly here on the anatomy of the hippopotamus we took, especially as the internal construction of the calf is somewhat different from that of the grown up animal. I shall, therefore, only shortly mention the following particulars: the stomachs were four in number, and thus one more than in the foetus examined by M. DAUBENTON, which was kept in spirits. Compare BUFFON, Tom. XII. Tab. IV. Fig. 2. The two first stomachs, which answer with, and were somewhat similar to the stomachs H. and L. (l. c.) were each of them about seven inches in length, and three inches in diameter; the third was nine inches long, and a little wider than the two former; the fourth was seven inches long, and at the upper part five inches broad, but decreased by degrees on one side till it ended in the *pylorus*, which had an opening an inch wide, being about half as wide again as the *cardia*. I did not discover any
such

such valves as M. DAUBENTON has delineated. The first stomach we found almost empty, as it contained only a few lumps of cheese or curd; it likewise was different from the rest, the internal coat being of a finer texture. The internal membrane of the second stomach was somewhat coarser, and had many small holes in it; it contained also several clods of caseous matter, along with a great quantity of sand and mud. The third stomach had very evident folds, both longitudinal and transversal, on the inside, and contained lumps of caseous matter of a yellow colour and harder substance than the others, together with several leaves quite whole and fresh, and at the same time some dirt. The interior membrane of the fourth stomach was very smooth, though it had also some folds; in the stomach itself lay a good deal of dirt, with a small quantity of curds, which were whiter than they were in any of the other stomachs. This fourth stomach in a great degree covered the rest, being situated on the right side of the animal, and was found to have the upper part of the milt adhering to its upper and interior edge. From hence this latter viscus, which was a foot long and three inches broad, diverged downwards on the left side. The intestinal canal was 109 feet long; the liver measured fourteen inches from right to left, and seven or eight inches from the hinder to the fore part. On its anterior edges it had a large notch, being in other respects undivided and entire; it was of an irregular shape, being broadest towards the left side, where I found a gall-bladder five inches long. In the uterus there was nothing particularly worthy of remark; I found two teats and the heart, surrounded with more fat in proportion than the elk-antelope's heart, which I have described at page 152 of this volume; this muscle was five inches long, and about four inches and a half broad. The communication between the auricles called the *foramen ovale*, was more than an inch in diameter; each lobe of the lungs was eleven inches long and undivided: but at the upper and outer part of the right lobe, there were two small lobes or processes elevated half an inch above the surface; and on the side answering to it, in the left lobe, and in the upper part of it, there was a little excrescence, ending in a point; somewhat

somewhat under this, yet farther forward, a process was likewise found, half an inch high. Immediately over the lower part of the communication formed between the right and left lobe, there was a kind of crest like a cock's-comb, measuring an inch from the top to the bottom.

One of my sporting companions informed me, that he had once remarked a peculiar kind of vermin on the body of one of these amphibious animals; but on the calf we had taken, we found nothing but a species of leech, which were only about the anus, and also at a considerable height up in the strait gut, where by a seasonable abstraction of the blood, they may be of use to these large amphibious animals; and particularly may act as preservatives against the piles, repaying themselves for their trouble in kind. Most of them were very small, but on the other hand there was a considerable number of them. the only large one I saw of this species, being somewhat more than an inch in length, I described and made a drawing of; this is inserted by the name of the *Hirudo Capensis, corpore supra nigricante, medio longitudinaliter sub-brunneo subtus pallide fusco*, in the elegant treatise on worms, which M. ADOLPHUS MODEER, first secretary of the Patriotic Society at Stockholm, is preparing for the press. Instead of the lighter coloured streak upon the back, there was discernible in some of these leeches, one, and sometimes two longitudinal brownish lines, which grew fainter and fainter towards the extremities.

This huge animal, of which we have been speaking, has no doubt obtained its present name of hippopotamus, which signifies river-horse, merely from the neighing sound it makes; as otherwise in its form it does not resemble a horse in the smallest degree, but rather a hog. Neither does it in the least resemble the ox; so it could be only the different stomachs of this animal, which could occasion it to be called *sea-cow*, at the Cape; and, perhaps, it is on the same account, that the Hottentots call it the *t'gao*, which approaches nearly to *t'kau*, the name by which the buffalo is known among these people.

From the account BELLONIUS gives of a tame hippopotamus, which he describes as an animal of a very mild and gentle nature, as well as from the disposition of the calf

calf we had just caught, it follows, that this creature might be easily brought over to Europe, where it has been formerly exhibited at two different periods in the public spectacles at Rome. (Vid. PLIN. lib. 8. and DI-ON. CASS. lib. 11.) For this purpose, the capture might easiest be made at *Konaps*-river, where these animals, according to the accounts I received from the *Caffres*, reside in great abundance; and milch-cows might be kept ready at hand, in order to rear the calf, in case it was a suckling. Indeed, I am inclined to suppose, that one somewhat older than this, would not be nice in its food; as that which we caught, was induced by hunger, as soon as it was let loose near the waggon, to put up with something not very delicate, which had been just dropped from one of our oxen. This, perhaps, may seem very extraordinary in an animal with four stomachs; but there have been instances of this kind known in common cattle, which in *Herjedal* are partly fed with horse-dug*. (Vid. A. H. HULPHERS'S *Beskrifning om Norrland*, 3:je Saml. om *Herjedalen*, page 27—87.) I have been likewise assured, that this method of feeding cattle has been very advantageously practised in *Uplandia*, when there has been a scarcity of fodder; and that afterwards these same cattle, even when they have not been in want of proper fodder, have taken to this food of their own accord, and eaten it without any thing else mixed with it.

At noon the temperature of the air was, according to FAHRENHEIT'S thermometer, 104 degrees; and the heat of the sun, to which I had been to-day particularly exposed, gave me a violent head-ach, which, however, was sensibly relieved, by wetting my head all over with vinegar. The length of time we had set up, had also contributed not a little to this indisposition of mine; nevertheless, we resolved still to continue blockading this place. The following night, however, it was uncomfortable and even dangerous for us to keep at our posts, in the open air, as there fell a violent thunder-shower, which not only made some of our fire-arms useless, but put out the fires we had made at the upper side of the pit; so that two sea-cows had the boldness to venture

out

* HULPHER'S Description of Norrland.

out of the water at this place, and run along the shallow in the river. We fired, indeed, a shot at them in the dark at a venture, but without effect.

In the morning of the 29th, finding that it would not be worth while to stay here any longer, we took our departure, going towards the south, and hunting *buffalos* and *koedoes*, one of which latter leaped into the river, as I have before-mentioned at page 158 of this volume. In the evening, we scarcely had taken our oxen out of the waggons, and unfaddled our horses, before a large rhinoceros passed within fifty paces of our waggon, probably without seeing any thing of us; as otherwise, in the opinion of the Hottentots, this enormous animal would not have failed at least to have turned our waggon topsy turvy. I have made mention of this rhinorecos at page 81 of this volume. It was, as we afterwards understood, in the midst of its flight, having been hunted just before by two of our party. It had got to a considerable distance from us, before we could take our fire-arms out of the waggon; so that two shot that we sent after him, could not possibly have any effect. Our hounds, which at first were able to keep close to the animal's heels, formed a strong contrast to the colossal size of this animal; while the beast on his part did not appear to take the smallest notice of them, but, with a trifling rise and fall of the neck, kept on an even and steady course, which, indeed, was a kind of pacing, but nevertheless rid a great deal of ground; which pace, however, as soon as he heard the report of our guns, he altered to a very fast gallop, so that the hounds were in a moment left at a great distance behind; and it seems to me, that any sportsman, though mounted on an excellent hunter, would inevitably be lost, who should be pursued by this animal, and had not art enough to get out of its sight and scent, by shifting and dodging occasionally. In this particular, it is reported, the rhinoceros resembles the elephant, that without delaying or stopping in the least, it will run to the distance of many leagues from the place where it has been closely hunted, or molested in any other way.

We set out on the 30th, for *Klein Viseb*-river, in hopes of succeeding better there in our pursuit after the *seacows*. It rained in the night.

We

We hunted some elk-antelopes, on the 31st, and afterwards met in this desert tracts of country with a young farmer, from the *Camdebo* quarter, who had taken a journey hither, together with a slave and two Hottentots in his service, in order to look out for a proper place to settle in. In the mean time they were feasting on some of the principal parts of a buffalo, which they had shot. In consequence of the directions we got from this man, we found three rhinoceroses, viz. a female, with her calf of no inconsiderable size, and a male, which was much larger than the female; and, indeed, was the largest I had ever seen. This last was struck in the shoulder by a ball from one of the Hottentots, who lay concealed behind a bush, a circumstance which made the animal rush forth into the plain, where all the sportsmen that were provided with horses were stationed; and who now, being greatly alarmed, betook themselves to flight. The greatest braggadochio in the whole company, was the first on this occasion to set an example of prudence, and a spirit of self-preservation in the extreme, by clapping spurs to his horse and galloping off immediately; and was the last to turn back and pursue the maimed and limping beast, as it turned off, which it soon did, towards a different quarter, and by this means at length made its escape through a close thicket.

One of my Hottentots, who in fact was our driver, but whom I had accustomed in some degree to shooting, and had at this time entrusted with a gun, that he might assist the other sportsmen, was charged by them of having evidenced, on this occasion, a greater inclination to skulk and hide himself, than to join in the sport. On which account, I having, by way of punishment, given his gun to one of the Boshies-men, he did not, indeed, show any concern at the time yet, perhaps, was even in this respect, capable of being actuated by ambition and emulation, as, indeed, are many of his countrymen; since, as a proof of his punishment having had an effect upon him, he afterwards exhibited that very day, though without any arms, great boldness and courage, in consequence of which, he ran the hazard of being trampled under foot by another rhinoceros that evening.

To

To conclude, we now quitted our horses, to go with a party of our Hottentots with a view to trace the wounded rhinoceros on foot. In this manner, notwithstanding the ground's being very dry and hard, we were able to follow the traces of the animal during the space of half an hour; for a Boshies-man, who was our principal leader, and (pointing occasionally to the earth) went before us with the deepest silence and utmost attention, was very skilful in observing (and regulating our course accordingly) where the dried grass or dust had been disturbed or displaced in the smallest degree; which, with all the attention I was master of, I could not discern; though in more than one spot, we found, nevertheless, distinct and unequivocal prints of the rhinoceros's feet, a proof that our leader had taken us right. In fact, necessity and custom render the sight, faculty of observing, and judgment of the Hottentots, very acute in this respect; in like manner, as on the other hand, from the operation of the same causes, they have acquired the talent, which is universally acknowledged, of finding water in spots they are not acquainted with, much better than the Christians; a talent, which alone serves them instead of a compass in particular exigencies, and precludes the necessity of supposing them to be endued with a particular acuteness in the organ of smell, as they are erroneously represented to be by some, who, living at a distance from the Hottentots, have no great opportunities of knowing this peculiar race of men. This, however, is no argument against the truth of the instances we have of other men who have been endued with a very fine and acute smell, not very different from that of the hound. We rode home to our waggons, in the evening; but the greater part of our Hottentots did not come home till next morning, after having shot a young buffalo.

On the 1st of February, my horse fell down with me, in hunting the elk-antelope, as I have already mentioned at page 155 of this volume. The same evening, two of our Hottentot marksmen found a rhinoceros lying on its right side; and so fast asleep besides, that it did not awake, though they accidentally made a considerable noise, by their gun-barrels striking against one another, when they first happened to observe it through the bush-

es, being at that time at the distance of only three or four paces from its hinder parts, and immediately during their alarm took aim; however, when they found that the animal did not awake, they gave themselves time to consider a little, and, after holding a consultation upon the point, made a circuit round two bushes, and having placed themselves so that they could direct the muzzles of their guns directly against the animal's head, discharged their pieces both at the same time into its brain: but afterwards again, the creature making a few trifling struggles, they were afraid it might come to itself again; on which account, as well as in order to amuse themselves, they charged again, and fired several balls into its chest. This occurrence, together with the account I had from an old hunter, of a rhinoceros which he found so sound asleep, that he was able to go very near to it and kill it, induced me to believe, that this animal sleeps very sound; although the case seems to have been quite different with the one-horned rhinoceros which Dr PARSONS made his observations upon, and gave a description and account of in London.

On the 2d of February, when I went to dissect the rhinoceros which had been killed the preceding day, I found that my Hottentot marksmen, in order more effectually to preserve the flesh from putrefying, had taken out the entrails as soon as the beast was dead; I saw, however, very evidently, from the liver, that these creatures have no gall-bladder; a fact, concerning which one of the farmers belonging to our hunting party disputed with me, and for which reason we were very anxious to chase them.

One of my Boshies-men, who had been desired to come to us, and assist in cutting up the rhinoceros, and at the same time bring with him a few things which we were in want of, put us very much to our shifts by staying away. It appears that he rather inclined to repair to the elk which had been shot the preceding night, partly because he preferred the taste of elk's flesh, and partly as, like his other countrymen, he greatly valued the sinews and *aponeuroses* of the elk; particularly those on the back of that animal, as making the best strings that could be procured for their cloaks

Now

Now this Hottentot, although according to our articles of war, as well as from his own experience, he had ground to expect a good drubbing for an act of disobedience of this nature, yet he made his appearance quite free and easy, with several slices of a honey-comb in his hand, and excusing himself in his language, which was interpreted to me as follows: "That the *boning-wymer* (*cuculus indicator*, vide page 139 of this volume) had enticed him quite away from that part of the country, where the rhinoceros was, to that where the elk lay; but that he had now brought with him a considerable quantity of honey to smear my mouth with." I, for my part, accepted both the excuse and the bribe; as my brother sportsmen, whose mouths began to water at the latter, unanimously agreed, that the Hottentot had acted better in following the honey-guide, than he would have done had he obeyed our injunctions.

But, where, in goodness' name, could a Boshies-man Hottentot, born and bred up in the wild and savage plains near *Zondags-rivier*, where could such a person as this learn the art of bribery? Was it from his simple companions, or was it not rather in consequence of the readiness of the more enlightened colonists to give these heathens a proof of their forgiving dispositions in this manner? It is matter of regret that I could not determine this question with any degree of certainty, as it would have thrown much light on the nature of man in his savage condition! It deserves, to be remarked, however, that the Hottentots in *Houtniquas*, who are in a much more civilized state, are said at times to endeavour to soften their judges with presents of honey; and even now and then succeed in their attempts, and thereby obtain besides particular privileges.

We this day took an ostrich's nest, and chased an elk, which I took notice of at page 154 of this volume, as having sweated blood. At night we surrounded a sea-cow-pit, out of which likewise a sea-cow came running up, but escaped, after two of our company had fired at her in the dark, and missed her.

On the 3d, our Hottentots again observed two rhinoceroses, a circumstance which, for the information of others, and in a particular manner of the posterity of the

colonists of this country, as to the numbers, and, as it were, peculiar abode of this enormous animal in these parts, seems to me to be worth noticing here. It may not be improper also, for the sake of giving the reader some idea of the general disposition of the Hottentots, to mention, that our driver spent twelve hours in running to a place and back again, where he recollected that he had left his wooden tobacco-pipe two days before, tho' he could have made another equally good in a little more than half the time. Here it may be observed also, that he walked all the way alone and unarmed, and consequently ran some risk of falling a prey to the lions. We were unsuccessful both this, and the following night, in our attempts on the sea-cows in the pits of *Little Visch-river*.

On the 5th, the three farmers who had come to assist us on the 22d of January, took leave of us in order to go home. We kept company together much longer than we had at first expected; the reason of which was, our having been so unsuccessful in hunting the sea-cow. Once, viz. on the 28th of January, it was, as I have already mentioned, the fault of FLIP. This young man's extraordinary droufiness, of which I have given an instance at page 205 of this volume, was probably the effect of a passion, which however, in general, makes others sleep-less. For FLIP, although a brisk young man in other respects, and bold and daring to a great degree in the chase, one who had killed many buffalos, and who, at so early a period as two years before this, being out with a party hunting the lion, had fired the first ball into the body of that fierce animal, was notwithstanding so timid with respect to the fair sex, that he had been long deeply enamoured with a fine girl in his neighbourhood, without courage to let either her or any one else know it; till one day when we were riding in close company over the desert plains, he disclosed his passion to me, (doubtless because I was a physician) and at the same time begged my advice. On my part, I prescribed to him to disclose his sentiments in writing to the object of his affections. Though FLIP was probably wholly ignorant of this mode of courtship, as well as, perhaps, the greater part of the colony, he notwithstanding

notwithstanding placed an implicit faith in the remedy, and the physician was invested with the office of dictating the terms of the billet-doux. The epistle was written accordingly on the round lid of my box; and, as may naturally be imagined, in a pretty amorous style, though in a curious kind of broken Dutch, which had a strong mixture of the foreign dialect of the composer; but as the young woman, in all probability, would lay greater weight on the looks of her lover, who was a smart well-made young fellow, than upon his letter, I was in hopes that, amidst all these disadvantages, my epistle would pave the way to his good fortune, which would indeed give me great pleasure.

C H A P. XVI.

Journey back to the Cape.

I Again proceeded homewards to the Cape on the 6th of February, with Mr IMMELMAN and my nine Hottentots, and arrived in the afternoon at the well of *Quam-medacka*, described at page 59 of this volume. Here I first began to have an earnest desire to revisit the Cape, having, almost as well as could be expected, accomplished my intentions in undertaking the expedition into these parts; and having hitherto, partly by means of the striking objects which really presented themselves to my notice, and partly in consequence of being in constant expectation of meeting with them, been able to pass the time with a certain degree of pleasure, under more fatigues and difficulties than can be easily imagined. Besides, I was now under the necessity of hastening back to the Cape, that I might not be overtaken by the winter season, and lose the opportunity of returning, or at least writing to Europe, by one of the homeward bound East-India ships.

In the evening I rode along with a Hottentot to the spot where we had killed the two rhinoceroses on the

19th of December, and found the greater part of these animals already eaten up or destroyed; but the skulls were still in good preservation. Having taken the smallest of these along with us, and being about to return to our waggon, we found in our way a female rhinoceros with her calf. These creatures had been probably drawn from the place of their retirement by the cool of the evening, and were at that time coming out to graze for the night. The calf was already about the size of a small ox, though its horns were of a very small size, compared with those of the mother; and upon the whole, it followed and was entirely guided by her motions. I would have waited with the greatest pleasure and patience, in order to explain this animal's method of eating and digging up roots, &c. but the night was drawing on, and it would have been too hazardous an undertaking for us two, to spend the night on these plains, which abound with lions and rhinoceroses, without the necessary apparatus for making a fire. Besides, the clattering noise made by the caparisons of our horses, had already betrayed us to the two rhinoceroses, while they stood listening and moving about their ears close by the entrance of a narrow vale, through which we must of necessity pass, if we wished to reach our waggon before night. In this critical situation, therefore, we had no other resource but to kill them immediately, or at least to frighten them away from the spot. Of these two different plans we were most disposed to attempt the former, though neither our guns, nor the charge with which they were loaded, were by any means adapted to game of such an enormous size: my Hottentot having taken along with him the only small fowling-piece, into which we put a leaden ball in addition to the shot with which it was already charged. My gun, indeed, was loaded with a lead and tin ball, which however, were not nearly large enough for a rhinoceros. Nevertheless, we crept on till we got behind a large spreading bush, which, as to its height and the extent of its branches, was like a tree, and stood on the front of the plain at the distance of fifteen paces only from the two rhinoceroses.

My gun, which had without my knowledge, got damp the night before, went off to my great surprize and disappointment,

appointment, with a hissing noise, and hung fire a long while; and, instead of striking the old rhinoceros in the heart, only wounded her, as we afterwards discovered, in the posterior angle of the lower jaw. It made her, however, swing about a little with the fore-part of her body, and snuff up her nostrils, as if attempting to discover her enemy by the scent; but as we were to the windward of her, so that she could not get scent of us, she proceeded forwards to the part whence she heard the noise, close followed by her calf, with a slow and measured pace, and seemingly very attentive, probably with the intention to search the bush all over which stood between her and us. The blood now began to rdden our faces, principally from the apprehension, that while we were attempting to avoid one of the beasts, we might run into the jaws of the other; for with one rhinoceros only, a sportsman of tolerable agility, may very well venture upon occasion to play at blind man's buff. My attendant and companion, who was the same Hottentot who had made so wretched an appearance in the presence of the Caffres, now kept his ground boldly, as he had engaged to do, and did not fire till the animals were just upon us; being frightened by this means, they rushed forward with great impetuosity, as we expected they would, and consequently passed us, when the Hottentot instantly leaped up among the boughs of the bush, and stole away to the other side of it. Having again found our horses at the place where we had tied them up out of the way, my curiosity led me to look which way the two rhinoceroses had taken. Indeed, I happened to discover them much sooner than I expected; and at the same time found, that they were nearer-sighted than I could have ever supposed, as they stood about eighty or ninety paces from me on the open plain, without appearing to perceive either me or my horse, although they stood listening with their heads turned towards the place from which I was advancing towards them. After this, dismounting from my horse, and walking on till I got within fifty or sixty paces of them, without any thing to cover my approach, I fired at the old animal, which even now did not observe me, but merely swinging the fore-part of her body from one side to the other with great impetuosity, and
at

at the same time blowing so hard and loud, that our horses, which I had left to the care of my Hottentot at several hundred paces distant, were not a little frightened by it. Upon this, the two wild beasts ran away through the bushes, where it was both hazardous and difficult to pursue them. The Hottentots, who were better acquainted with this kind of chase, afterwards told us, that it would have been much better for us, had we fired at the calf, on which the small ball would have proved more effectual; in which case they supposed, that the mother would have remained with the dead body till the next day, when they might have gone there and shot her also. In like manner they imagined, that the calf would have remained with the body of the mother in case she had been first killed.

It was dark as pitch before we reached our waggons; and as there was no beaten path here, I greatly apprehended that we should lose our way; though my Hottentot was under no concern on that head, being quite confident what he was about. There was, however, great cause to fear, lest in the dark we should ride full against a rhinoceros, or else into the jaws of a lion. At one time our horses startled, a circumstance which not a little alarmed us; till we remarked, that what excited our fears was nothing than a porcupine, (vide Vol. I. page 106.) The holes and subterraneous passages which this, as well as the various other animals, above mentioned have made, and by which the ground was every where undermined, made our horses at different times fall, which put us under the disagreeable necessity of riding very slow; at length we began to perceive now and then a little glimmer from the fire of our brother sportsmen who were left with the waggon at *Quammedacka*, and I must confess, that I was not a little rejoiced at the sight of this leading star. When at length we had reached our waggons, we were informed, that our Hottentot huntsman had likewise that day seen and wounded a rhinoceros. Just before dawn two buffalos came to drink at the well near which we were encamped; but though we fired at them, we missed our aim in the dark.

On the 7th we passed by *Hevy* to *Kurekoiku*, and killed a buffalo in our road. We were awakened in the night

night by several horrid dissonant noises, which, though quite different from each other, were uttered at one and the same time, so as to form a most dismal chorus. Among these, however, there was one sound which almost drowned the rest, and which in some degree resembled the disgusting kind of laugh, which the simple boors of Sweden ascribe to a spirit they call the *Gast*, or the shrieking man, but which is nothing but one of the several different cries commonly uttered by the *Strix nyctea*, or screech-owl. By the light of the moon we could observe on a hill beside us, the glimpse of above ten hyænas; and the horrid noise we heard, was probably, nothing but a tumultuous yell, which they raised in order to frighten our oxen, and put them to flight, not venturing otherwise to attack them; but these, with our usual prudence we had fastened to the waggon. As I thought one of these ravenous animals presented a good mark to my gun, I could not help, firing a ball at it in direct contradiction to the advice of my Hottentots. The shot, so far from frightening them, rather led them to repeat their attempts to frighten us: as the whole pack now rushed down from the hill, and ran close past us at full speed, which had the appearance at first of their having proposed a general attack on us.

We continued our way homewards on the 8th, when, besides a few scattered hartbeests, we saw a large flock of elk-antelopes; we likewise that day killed a buffalo, by which our Hottentot marksman ran the greatest hazard of being trampled under foot.

On the 9th, we again observed several elk-antelopes, hartbeests, and quaggas, passing by *Hassogai-bosch*. We killed a female elk, from whose body we cut out a fœtus, which we carried along with us, and the next morning dissected. The viscera we found resembled those of gazels in general.

On the 10th, we met a farmer, who told us, that two days journey from this place, two Caffre princes were at war with each other on account of a few stray calves. At this place, crossing Boshies-man-rivier, we went up to a *craal* of *Gonaquas Hottentots*, who, in our presence, performed their military exercise, of which I have taken some notice at page 116 of this volume.

On

On the 11th one of our Boshies-men having got information, that his nearest relations had removed along with their craal into this neighbourhood, wished to take leave of us; and as he had given us company and assistance during the whole course of our journey, he asked somewhat by the way of gratuity or recompence; which I readily complied with, to his entire satisfaction, giving him a steel for striking fire, a brass tinder-box, some tobacco, a knife, and a few glass beads. He was the only married man of our party, and appeared to have more œconomy than any of the rest, having for his own use, or that of his wife, loaded himself with the flesh of the buffalo we last killed; some of which he carried lying over his shoulders, and the rest hanging on a stick, in order to dry it in the sun. When the time came in which he must part from us and his countrymen, he went off without taking any leave. In fact, it is the custom with the Hottentots, (as now, indeed, it is at times practised with us) to *eclipse*, as it is called, in this manner. However, on my calling out to him in Dutch, when he was a good distance from us, *farewel*, accompanied with the Hottentot salutation *t'habe*, he answered me in the same language; at the same time making several aukward bows in the Dutch fashion. The other Hottentots immediately laughed at this incident, and (perhaps on this account) took a formal leave of us, as well as of each other, when they left us at *Zondags-rivier*, where we arrived in the evening. Here I met with an old Hottentot, who was born with nipples, the two spurious ones being rather less than the others, and placed three inches lower.

On the 12th, we met with several peasants, who, with the leave of the present governor, **BARON PLETTENBERG**, had removed hither in order to inhabit this part of the country; which, on this account, in my map, I have called **PLETTENBERG's colony**. In the evening about dusk, the thermometer was at 68 degrees, when the rain began, which continued, with a south-west wind, all night along.

At seven o'clock, on the 13th, the thermometer was at 64, and the whole day was overcast and rainy. We saw a *koedoe*, and our Hottentot marksman, who had been courting along *Zondags-rivier*, informed us, that he had

had seen one of the sea-cows there, and her calf riding on her back, when she came up to the surface of the water, in order to breathe; but that as soon as she had got scent of him, she breathed with the edge of her nostrils only out of the water; and each time after she had breathed, dived, or ducked her head forward, with such nice exactness, that her calf likewise appeared with the extremity of her nostrils only above the surface of the water, and was able to blow itself also.

We came to Kuga on the 14th; at five in the afternoon, the thermometer was at 72 degrees.

On the 15th, about dawn, the thermometer was at 62. We saw some buffalos, and three Hottentot fugitives, and paid another visit to the salt-pans, with the view of catching insects. At noon, the thermometer was at 90 degrees in the shade. We visited a little *craal* of Caffres, which had lately removed to *Zwartkops-rivier*; and went to the upper part of this river, to visit a colonist of the name of GERT SKEPPER, who had long resided there, on the one hand, in conformity to some orders of government, and on the other, in direct opposition to them: for government, which, though it had long employed land-surveyors, was yet left quite in the dark as to the geography of the country, had not allowed the colonists to cultivate or dwell farther to the eastward than *Kabeliaauw-rivier*, but had left them at liberty to inhabit what part they chose to the south of *Camdebo*; for which cause, this shrewd peasant had gone round about by the way of *Camdebo* from the Cape to this place, to take possession of it; and upon this pretence, had got a charter for the tenure of it; when, on the other hand, had he gone by the nearer and better road, he would have been severely punished. We were altogether disappointed in our hopes of furnishing ourselves with bread here, as the farmer himself had chosen to be without it for some days past, rather than grind the corn in his hand-mill. We lived consequently, sometime wholly upon flesh. From the 5th of February to this time, we had been provided with a very coarse kind of meal, or gurgions, which our Hottentots, with the addition of a moderate quantity of water, had every day kneaded into dough, and made up into small loaves or cakes of seven

or eight inches diameter, and about half an inch thick: these were baked upon the ground, which had been previously heated by our fires, with great ease and readiness, by covering them well up with warm ashes and a few live coals.

A small company of *Gunjemans* Hottentots, whose ancestors, at the period when the Dutch invaded this part of the continent, lived on the tract of country about *Table-mountain* and *Constantia*, were now on friendly terms with the above-mentioned farmer. By what I could learn, this little company had long been without the exercise of any personal authority among them, free of beggars, and without any penal laws and statutes, as well as without crimes and misdemeanors; having been united together and governed by their own natural love of justice and mildness of disposition only, together with some common usages and customs of the Hottentots. My Hottentots from *Zwellendam* appeared to hold in high estimation the virtue, freedom, and happy state of these people; insomuch, that they were resolved to become sharers of the blessings enjoyed by this happy race, for the remainder of their lives, as soon as they should have terminated our journey at the Cape. For this purpose, they begged of me to buy for each of them at this place a heifer with calf, which, according to our bargain, they had a right to demand for their payment. Considered, as Hottentots this way of thinking and turn of mind, by no means discredited them. I, therefore, advanced for them glass beads, brass tinder-boxes, knives, and steels for flints, to the value of about nine or ten rix-dollars: for which consideration, two of the best heifers in their opinion among the whole drove of cattle belonging to the *craal*, were pitched on for them.

The most considerable part of this herd were the property of a widow, who was computed to be worth sixty milch-cows, and was (at least in this respect) the most respectable female Hottentot I ever knew. She had no children, and was to be succeeded in her estate by her cousin; she appeared to be more than middle age, and, in her younger days, to have been a beauty in her kind. Besides a valuable necklace of shells, and a spare cap, (*vide* Plate I. Vol. I.) (which by the way I got from her, only

only in the way of barter,) she was no better dressed than the rest; having no more leathern rings on her arms and legs, a better sheep-skin over her shoulders, and particularly no more grease upon her body than the others had. It is true, that besides a few common glass-beads, I remarked that two strings of the small copper-beads, mentioned at page 170 of the same volume, were kept by her in a private pocket, being the whole of her trinkets and jewels, and the only thing for which the rest of her sex would possibly envy her. However, I am willing to hope, that this vice had as yet little or no root among these gentle and benevolent people; as the female just mentioned, who was so much richer than any of them, was not observed to take more state upon her, and, indeed, hardly to be dressed better than the rest. In fact, the other women smoked their pipes, by her side, without ceremony; and these two were filled by my Hottentots, without the smallest respect to persons, with a close-spun and better kind of tobacco, which they had brought with them; while, for their entertainment, on the other hand, a ball was set on foot, which was to open late at night, and by moon-shine. Here I must own, that my companion and I, by allowing ourselves to sleep, lost a fine opportunity of seeing and describing a brilliant *Gunjemans-Hottentot* ball, which was said to be very different from the dances I have before-mentioned.

In fine, it seemed to me, that the Hottentot widow I have just been speaking of, was the less liable to be the object of the envy of her compatriots, as, notwithstanding all her riches, she could not get at more savory and high-seasoned dishes, and of course could not have more fashionable pains and indigestions, nor any disorders that would entitle her to greater respect than the rest; for in the hairy leathern sacks for milk, this salutary beverage is not either by nature or art, prepared for the rich in any other way than it is for the poor. They all roast their *uynties* in the ashes, in the same simple manner; and almost all of them dress their meat by broiling it over the coals, as it is a very uncommon thing for a Hottentot to have earthen vessels of his own manufacturing, for the purpose of broiling or stewing his victuals; and as the

Hottentots absolutely detest salt, they must eat all their meat (which is either fresh, or else dried in the sun,) dressed in this way; though upon recollection, it occurs to me, that their diet may also be varied by the addition of a little more or less fat.

Consequently fat or grease was here, and indeed is universally among the Hottentots, who live at a distance from the Dutch, one of the principal comforts of life; and, to say the truth, is the only gratification afforded to this nation by its herds of cattle; and which is likely to prove a motive sufficiently powerful, to incite them to be eager after the acquisition of this kind of wealth: at the same time, I mean not to exclude other motives, which in all probability co-operate with this; such as, for instance, some respect to the honour and advantage of being able to maintain several servants, or cow-herds, as well as the divine pleasure of doing good to their fellow-creatures. To the stimulus of this latter inducement, I consider the Hottentots to be by no means insensible; as I have seen them shew the greatest hospitality to each other, when in the course of their business, or merely for pleasure, they have visited one another from a great distance. Besides, it is probable, that in the other well governed Hottentot crails, as well as in this, no member of society is abandoned to any great degree of indigence and misery. But in consequence of the farther migrations of the colonists hither, and of the quantity of glass-beads and other commodities which I at this time brought to market here, and for which I found a ready sale among the fair sex, I think I can evidently foresee a speedy and not inconsiderable revolution in the turn of mind and manners of this society.

There arose so violent a storm from the north-west on the 16th, that we did not venture to set out on our journey, lest our waggon should be overset on the plains. Towards night, however, the wind turned about to the south-east, and was not so violent, being accompanied with rain.

On the 17th, there fell a drizzling rain. At first setting out we passed two Caffre families just removed to this place, and afterwards proceeded to the southward into *Krabelanna*, passing by several hollows or lens

of different sizes, which contained very few saline particles, but on the contrary, a great deal of rain-water: these I have marked in the map, by the same marks which I have made use of for pointing out the salt-pans. I took this circuit, solely for the purpose of taking a transient view of two harbours or inlets, to which I was informed a small Dutch vessel had lately paid a visit, and taken possession of it, as it were, in the name of the government at the Cape, by erecting a small marble stone, on which they placed the company's mark. The Captain of this vessel is said to have told his employers, that there was good anchorage in both these harbours, and particularly in that which lay to the southward; which however I did not give myself time to examine, but have notwithstanding laid it down on my map from the information of others, and distinguished it by an anchor. Yet, as there is said to be no river nor springs in this harbour, it would not be of great utility to ships which are in scarcity of water; but, on the other hand, being adjacent to the forest, it is more commodious for fetching wood and timber. The strand and the tract of country between *Zwart-kops-rivier*, and the rivulet or brook which I have marked in the map on the northermost inlet of *Krakekamma*, besides being flat and bare of wood, were also found to be low and sandy, but from that spot began to be full of rocks and breakers; and as it was visible from the land, between south and east, ended in a sharp point, with a rock which had been detached from it; and which in all probability formed part of what, is called *Point Padron*, in the Portuguese chart. The weather now cleared up for a little, so that I got a distinct view of *Sunday river*, and two islands lying near it: but all these, need a more accurate investigation, as well as to be delineated on a separate chart and on a larger scale, than can be reasonably expected in so general a map as mine; which, therefore, can only be useful, in this point, as a foundation for the farther and more minute researches of navigators.

Government having of late permitted the colonists to inhabit *Krakekamma*, a farmer had twelve days before left a number of cattle here under the care of one *Hottentot* only.

While they were removing hither, the farmer himself being present with his hounds by his side, a lioness had killed one of his oxen in the dusk of the evening, but was frightened away from her prey by the noise which the farmer's people made with their whips, and by the yelling of the hounds. The next day they looked for the lioness in vain, finding instead of her the three whelps, which did not make any attempt to get away, but proudly put themselves in a posture of defence against the dogs, which were nearly four times their number, and which immediately tore them in pieces: for in truth, these hounds were not much smaller than the wild beasts themselves, which besides were observed to be very rough and rugged, lean, and apparently half starved; so that they supposed the lioness herself either perished with hunger, or else fell sick, the rather, as she never made her appearance again in those parts to take her revenge.

In the morning of the 18th, the thermometer was at 67 degrees, so that very probably the temperature of the air near the sea, was here, as it is generally elsewhere, milder than farther up the country.

We shot a hartbeest on the 19th, and on the 20th, came to a farm newly laid out, and lying on an eminence, from which, we early the next morning, saw thousands of buffalos in rows, one following another crossing the plains by the sea-side, which were enclosed by a thick wood, from which these animals were then marching, probably with a design to spread themselves afterwards over the pastures, and graze at a distance from one another; having, perhaps, been obliged to keep together in the night, in order to defend themselves against some lions. In the afternoon we killed an old buffalo, and at the same time arrived at a farm newly laid out, near a little lake, fen, or hollow, filled with fresh water to a considerable depth, where we killed a few ducks, and I made a drawing of the live buffalocalf mentioned at page 48 of this volume.

On the 22d, we fell in with some farmers of our acquaintance, who, together with their wives, children, and cattle, had removed into *Krakekamma*. These honest rustics gave us much satisfaction by news of different kinds they brought from the Cape, and from our
friends

friends upon the road; being on their parts very happy to find us safe and in a whole skin, as people had all along dreaded that we would fall a sacrifice to the blood-thirsty disposition of the Caffres; and this was imagined to have been really the case, from the long stay we made before we returned. We then made a trip to *Van Staades-rivier*, to see the same Gonaquas Hottentots, which we had met with already in our journey to *Agter Brunjes-boogte*. But as the current of this river was dammed up in a considerable degree by storms and the surf of the sea, we were obliged to return again next morning by a road two hours round about, before, by reason of mountains and other such hindrances, we could find a shallower place; by which at length, however, we crossed this river. We met with several Hottentot families there, who called themselves *Damaquas*, and appeared to have a greater alliance with the Caffres than the Gonaquas had. We then came to a pretty steep hill, which, though only a few hundred yards long, was a good hour's work for six oxen, and hard pulling to go up it with the waggon, which might, upon occasion, have been drawn by one pair only on plain ground.—On the 22d we halted at *Galge-bosch*;—on the 23d at *Looris rivier*:—and on the 24th we remained at *Camtours-rivier*, with Captain Kiers, whom I mentioned at the beginning of this volume; and who, on account of a trifle that I gave him to boot, bartered with me for two of my oxen, which were become quite useless to me. A pair of young lively oxen, full of fire and spirit, and as swift-footed as deer, which I got from him in place of these, were each of them immediately yoked with a steady old ox, and in the space of a few hours were pretty well broke in, by the assistance of the large whip. Indeed, the reader must not suppose that these animals are as slow and heavy in Africa as they are in our country, where they must be kept within doors during our long winters: but should keep in mind, on the contrary, what I have mentioned at page 169 of Vol. I. concerning a Hottentot who had brought up his pack-ox to hunting.

On the 26th, we reached *Cabeljaauw-rivier*; and the same day, the bailiff of this farm, Mr IMMELMAN and I rode towards the lower part of *Camtours-rivier*, in order

to look out for sea-cows. Of the mode of living and manners of these animals, I have already spoken at page 209 of this volume. To what has been there mentioned I will only add, that we now saw these animals going out to sea with the tide, as, indeed, it is said, it is their general practice to do. At this time they seemed to enjoy themselves, by blowing, rolling, and tossing about in the water, which was here already salt, but they were said to return in greater silence with the tide of flood. By reason of the rushes and weeds which grew on the inside of the river, our shot did not take effect; by which means likewise these animals became so shy, that for a long time after we could not attack them with any prospect of success.

There was one particular track more beaten by the buffalos, than the others which led to the under part of the river through a very close thicket full of thorns and briars, but otherwise cut through in every direction with a labyrinth of buffalo-paths. An old buffalo, with scarcely any hair upon its hide, which rushed from a bush close by us, and was very near knocking us down, stupefied our guide, so that he lost his usual marks on the road; by which means, we were under the necessity of riding backwards and forwards about two hours, being all the time in no little danger from the buffalos; and absolutely in an uncertainty whether we should be able to get out of the labyrinth in the space of as many days, the rather as if the sun did not shine out, whereby we might find out whereabouts we were. After this, we chased and wounded a *hartbeest* on the open plains.

On the 28th, we visited our old and opulent friend JACOB KOK, near *Sea-cow* river; where, after an absence of full three months, during which time we had been continually changing our lodging, we now, by the attention of our kind hostess, had an opportunity to rest our weary limbs and bodies wearied out, as it were, with fatigue, on the softest beds in the best bed-chamber. But scarcely had we spent two nights, after so agreeable an attention, before we found ourselves, (while sinking in the yielding down,) employed in heavy though restless slumbers, attended with the most painful dreams; slumbers with which we had to struggle at a late hour every morning,

ning, almost as if we had been in the agonies of death. While on the other hand, before our return hither, though laid on the ground, and in the open air, we had constantly enjoyed an easy, cool, and refreshing sleep, out of which we usually awaked of our own accord, as early and brisk as the rest of the animal creation, which awoke with the early dawn of day.—On the 29th, the day following our arrival, it rained the whole day long, with the wind at south-east.

March 1st and 2d, were rainy with the wind at south-east. The thermometer stood at 72. We remained with our worthy and agreeable hosts till the 7th of this month. At times, during this period, I rode out with my landlord to the sea-shore, and regaled myself with oysters, at the same time carrying some home with me. Some time previous to this, he had found in the strand there a bottle of red wine, and set it aside to regale us with it on our return from the desert. This, though not very well-corked, proved not only not damaged, but even excellent; and had probably, by means of a shipwreck, or of its having been offered up, either in a merry or superstitious mood, by some brave tar to Neptune, been long tossed about by the waves, before it came to its original destination, to which we applied it by drinking one another's healths. In one part of the strand, we found a strong smell of amber, though we could not find any of this drug thereabouts. I have brought home with me several samples of the *Gorgonia ceratophyta* (a black horn-like coral with a red bark) which had been thrown up here by the sea; one of these, which was three feet and a half in length, and is branched out to an almost equal breadth, is thought by several connoisseurs, who have seen the first cabinets in Europe, to be one of the largest of this species that ever was discovered.

On the 9th we again paid a visit to *Sisfikamma*, where we now found a number of snakes, which had fled to the sands, on account of the farmers having set fire to the dry grass, in order to manure their lands, and there at this time lay dead; some of them were scorched by the fire, some dried up by the sun, and others rotted to pieces. There were some evident traces of their having had four legs, so that this serpent was probably the *anguis quadrupes*

quadrupes of LINNÆUS. Numbers of the *bulle achatina* of LINNÆUS, though only the *varietas livida* of it, were found living on the sandy plains, and up in the trees. When I was formerly here, I found in the very shell of one of these snails, several yolks of eggs (as it were) shaped like common eggs, which, however, contained nothing but a thin watery liquid.

On the 11th, having taken up our lodgings near *Wagenbooms-rivier*, the most easterly part of *Lange-kloof*, we discovered suddenly at night, that a tract, near three miles long, consisting of fields of dry grass, was in flames. This burning, which a neighbouring farmer had occasioned, in order to destroy the arid plants, grass, and bushes which grew on his lands, (though it must be confessed, that he had engaged in it very unluckily, both as to time and weather,) spread with the wind which blew very hard, with great rapidity, proceeding in a straight line to the farm where we were; so that our hosts were forced to throw water on the roof of their corn-loft, in order to keep it from the flames. We were also not a little anxious about the safety of our waggon, and were obliged to keep ourselves in readiness to drive it into the water, as well as to put off our journey till the following day, as the fire burnt very rapidly on every side of the road. By this way of manuring the land, a number of serpents, lizards, scorpions, and several other kinds of insects, as well as young birds, are commonly destroyed in their habitations. When we sailed along the African coast, in the *Resolution*, on our return from the South Pole, we saw under night several large fires up the country, which were probably occasioned by the lands being set fire to in this way.

A piece of *lapis lazuli* in a matrix of *quartz*, which I found in the neighbourhood of the above-mentioned river, contained in it a considerable quantity of metal. But, supposing that this mineral abounds here, even then it would barely pay for the smelting, on account of the distance and the badness of the roads, by which the coal and fuel must be carried hither for this purpose from *Sirkamma*.

We left this place on the 13th, and arrived at *Krakael-rivier*, which I now discovered to be a continuation of *Wagenbooms-*

Negenbooms-rivier, but have forgot to rectify the error in my map*. In the evening, as I rode alone to *Appes-rivier* on a spirited horse which I had lately purchased, and which was not acquainted with this part of the country, it is no wonder that I missed my way when the night was far advanced; especially as the road over certain fields was unbeaten and not easily distinguished. In the mean while, one of the most violent storms of thunder that I ever experienced in any climate came on me: the lightning often darting and crackling between my horse's feet, while I was naturally enough pushing him on as quickly as I could, in order to get out of the rain. And although my horse, notwithstanding this, lost none of his mettle, but, on the contrary, made several sudden starts and leaps, yet the poor creature was so much affected at two different times by the violence of the thunder, that he sunk quite down to the ground. As I found that I run hazards in various ways, and met with several obstacles in the course I was steering, I thought it most advisable to attempt, by the assistance of the flashes of lightning, which were very frequent, to regain the beaten path which I had left. In this endeavour I was at last successful, and lighted upon a newly laid out farm, without any other building upon it, than a solitary hut thatched with straw; in which, though I found no better company than a parcel of Hottentots, I was very thankful to have at least the comfort of a roof over my head; the fire was already quite burnt out, so that I was obliged to sit there freezing and dripping wet till the next morning. In the mean while, I was very anxious about Mr IMMELMAN, who had set out the same evening, though somewhat later than I did; but he, by means of a horse which he led in hand, and which was perfectly acquainted with the road, arrived safe at the place of our destination; and also missing me, was not less uneasy on my account than I had been on his; and, after having made several signals in vain, by firing a musket, among other surmises which his imagination conceived, he could not help being apprehensive that I was struck dead by lightning; the rather as he had thought himself in great danger from it, by a flash having darted into the ground close

* This error is rectified in the present edition.

close by the side of his horses, throwing them both on their knees in the same instant. It rained the following night also, but without much thunder; and on the 15th, while we were on the way to *Kukoi-rivier*, it rained the whole day.

We came again to the farm of *Zand-plaat* on the 16th, near *Klein-dorn-rivier*, mentioned in Vol. I. p. 213. Here they were at this period very busy in preserving and drying raisins; which was done by macerating the grapes a longer or shorter time, according to their kinds, in boiling water, and then spreading them out on mats to dry. The uncommon drought which, this summer in a greater or less degree, infested the whole country, had, among many other hardships produced here, as well as in many places, a scarcity of meal, so that they had no bread at this farm. The cattle died in many places for want of food; so that at *Valebe-rivier*, (*Falſe-river*) where, as I mentioned at page 174 of Vol. I. I saw, the preceding September, several buckets of butter-milk thrown out, they complained that they had then barely sufficient to wean a child with. In consequence of this parching drought, which, according to the account I afterwards read in the papers, was probably pretty general in other parts of the world, my draught-oxen declined in their flesh, being quite spent and worn out with fatigue, so that several of them died one after another; this obliged me to fill up their places with fresh oxen.

On the 20th we reached *Zaffraan-craal*. On the 21st, early in the morning, we entered the tedious and tiresome valley, called *Artaguas-kloof*; and about the dusk of the same evening, at a precipice by the road-side, my waggon met with a worse misfortune than it had done during the whole journey, as it was totally overturned. Besides the risque which one of our Hottentots and two of the hind oxen ran of breaking their necks, I had the mortification of seeing my collection of natural curiosities tumble down the hill, in consequence of which they received considerable damage. I consider it, however, as remarkably lucky, that I was at this time near at hand, by which means I, in a great degree, preserved them.

On the 22d we had, with great care and fatigue, got the waggon, and our wearied oxen, through the remainder

der of *Artaqua-kloof*, having been forced to unload it in two difficult places, and carry the contents of it ourselves. Our landlord at *Hagel-craal*, who had himself travelled a good deal in this country, was very happy at our having got so well off. This night frequent showers fell; but on the 23d, when we arrived at *Honing-klip*, there fell during the whole night the most dreadful heavy rain known in the memory of man; which continued, though with somewhat less violence, all the following day, being the 24th, by which means, on the 25th, the road leading from hence was totally impassable.

We crossed *Valsche-rivier* on the 26th. They began now, in this part of the country, to take advantage of the wet which had fallen, for sowing; but though every grazier in this country has a greater portion of land, draught-oxen, and bread than he wants, yet the farmers here had scarcely every one a plough-share to themselves, and this as well for want of smiths as of iron: both which, even in the town itself, are not easily to be procured. I was exceedingly hurt to find, that these good people were not more abundantly supplied with a metal with which our country abounds almost to excess, and of the implements made of which probably all South-America is as much in want as the southern part of Africa; where I at this time saw a wealthy farmer wringing his hands and complaining, that he could not make use of the wet weather, on account of his plough being broken, and was obliged to wait till he could borrow one from some of his neighbours. I shall only mention here, that a plough-share, 17 inches in length, and 19 in breadth, such as is generally used in this country, costs from three to five rix-dollars; and a small round shouldered spade, with a peaked point, which could be purchased in Sweden for ten-pence, is sold at the Cape for about six times that price. Copper vessels also fetch a high price in this country, but the demand for them is but inconsiderable; and they must be manufactured after the particular fashion of the country.

March 27. As I had no occasion to observe, during the whole journey, the smallest disagreement among the Hottentots, excepting that a young Hotentot girl rallied one of the same nation pretty smartly, who was
older

older than herself, because she wore too small, and consequently indecent a *t'neite* or apron, we were this day the more surprized to be witnesses of a terrible fierce battle between two Hottentots at *Zoete-melk-rivier*. I must not, however, neglect to mention, that the combatants were husband and wife, both equally small and stunted in their growth, as well as matched in point of strength; both born and bred in the service of the Christians, and both dressed in the Hottentot manner.

There was at that time nobody but a few slaves at home, who every now and then separated them; but on the least wry face or hasty word, these loving turtles flew like lightning again at one another's throats. On my shewing my surprize at the peculiar alertness and expertness they shewed in boxing each other, one of the slaves answered me very gravely, "*Ha, baas!* there is no great cause of surprize in that, for in two years that I have been here, scarcely a day has passed but they have been practising together once, if not more, before any body could get them parted." The singularity of this account was increased by his, at the same time remarking, "that they had never been seen at variance of nights, nor had they ever had occasion to upbraid each other with the smallest infidelity." Matters being in this situation, we desired the slaves to let them alone, as the properest way of reconciling them, and leave them at liberty, to use the English sailors phrase, *to fight it out*, and give each other their belly full. This was done accordingly, and I have cause to believe, that they not only had enough of this sport, but even more than they could have wished, and consequently that the ensuing peace, was the more durable.—On the 28th, 29th, and 30th, it rained more or less, but the wind was always at west. At *Krombeek-rivier* a yeoman, who paid great attention to the weather, had observed, that the most violent winds were the north-west and south-east; but that the former was generally the strongest, and that the west wind was the warmest; but what was very remarkable was, that the north wind was the coldest. He told me likewise, that the south-east wind was not nearly so cold as it was at the Cape, and that the west wind commonly set in every evening. Foul weather generally came
into

into this country with an easterly or westerly wind. Though violent rains fell at that time at the Cape, or on the other side of *Hex-rivier*, it seldom reached as far as this place, the wind becoming only colder. Likewise when it rains here, the rain seldom reaches to the other side of the last-mentioned river.

I rode by myself on the 31st to a farm on the opposite side of the upper part of *Duyven boeks-rivier*, having ground, to believe, from report, that there was gold ore to be found at this place.

On the 1st of April I examined this pretended gold ore, and found it was only a *pyrites*, which they had given themselves the trouble of breaking off from the hills. In certain spots here about, I met with a blue clay, impregnated with iron, which at first, in some degree, imparted a colour to any thing rubbed upon it; but in the space of a few days it grew hard, and acquired a schirrous nature. I likewise found a red ferruginous earth, or bole, but higher up in the hills there was a great quantity of flint-sand. Towards the conclusion of the preceding month a distant noise had been heard, and we were afterwards told, that certain changes had taken place in a mountain, and in a little stream lying a great many miles on the other side of the high chain of mountains upon which I was at this time.

We arrived at *Zwellendam* on the 5th, from whence, for the sake of variety, we resolved to pursue the remainder of our journey by *Hex-rivier*, *Kockelmans-kloof*, *Roodeland*, &c. This district of country was partly of the carrow kind, and was so populous, (chiefly by *wine-boors*) that I could not find room to distinguish all the farms with the usual circular mark in my map. The rivers, or more properly brooks, which lay between *Zwellendam* and *Hex-rivier*, were *Puspas-valley*, *Klip-rivier*, *Meulenaars rivier*, *Leeuwen-rivier*, *Saaras-rivier*, *Fink-rivier*, *Goree-rivier*, *Seuj-rivier*, and *Nana-rivier*.

The river *Goree* just mentioned takes its name from the *aloe* plant, (vide LINN. *Suppl. Plant.*) commonly called *Goree-bosch* at the Cape: though, this well-known vegetable, of which there are many varieties, being of a succulent nature, grew not only in that spot but also extremely well in all the dry *carrow* and *half carrow* plains;

yet it grew most abundantly in the tract of country lying around *Muscle-bay*, *Gaurits* and *Duyvenboeks riviers*; so that in certain spots about these places, and that principally on the declivity of mountains, these plants formed groves, (as it were) of small palm-trees. For the stems which arose from, and consisted of the thick succulent leaves, in consequence of almost the whole of each leaf, after being shrunk up and withered towards the bottom, having fallen off, or at least having been intentionally stripped off, (by which means they had besides acquired a rough, brown, and parched appearance) were yet, in general, strait and erect, from eight to thirty feet high, and about one foot thick, and were terminated by tufts of fresh and healthy leaves of a vivid green colour.

Both the use, and the real name of this vegetable, (viz. *aloe*) was, as many people have told me, long unknown to the colonists, and on this account the plant had been neglected and held very cheap by them. It is true, there had always been in the government service a number of Negro slaves, who, at their native place, which was another part of the African coast, had acquired the method of preparing, as well as to know the value of the gum aloe; but bowing, under the yoke of slavery as they did, they would rather at any time have seen a dart pierce the hearts of their tyrants, than be serviceable in procuring them any additional knowledge or source of wealth of any kind; by which, on the one hand, the avarice, pride, and power of their masters, and on the other, their work, as well as the number of slaves needed would be increased. For this cause, the use of the aloe was for a long time kept a secret among the slaves; who, indeed, made it a point of conscience not to reveal it, till one of them, called GORÉE, made a discovery of it to a colonist of the DE WITT family. Whether this was the effect of gratitude to his master for his humane treatment of him, or whether it was done in the expectation of being rewarded for it, they could not inform me with any degree of certainty: they only knew that DE WITT had, by means of this discovery, obtained an exclusive privilege for the delivery of a fixed quantity of aloes to the East-India company, and had entrusted GORÉE with the inspection of the whole work.

It

It is likewise from the name of this negro, that the aloe plant is to this day generally, if not always, called the *Goree-bosch* in Africa.

Their method of preparing gum-aloe, in Africa, has, it is true, been already described by Professor THUNBERG, (vide Transactions of the Swedish Physiographical Society, Part I. Art. II. page 112.) But as my readers may, notwithstanding, probably expect some information on this head, I have thought proper to communicate the following particulars on this subject.

The leaves being stripped off at some distance from the stem, as many of them as there is room for are laid in a slanting situation over the concavity of another aloe leaf laid under them for this purpose, so that the juice, trickling down from the leaves which are cut, may be gathered in it. After this, all the juice contained in these reservoirs, is boiled down to about a third part, and being poured into boxes, is left to coagulate and grow hard.

Others again only wipe off the juice, which proceeds from the fresh cut leaves, several times against the edges of a marble vessel, wherein it is thus collected, and is afterwards boiled down.

In the methods above-described, which, however, are probably, by no means the best that might be devised, only a few drops, or at most a thimbleful or two, are procured from each leaf. By handling it, the hands of those employed about it are subject to be made sore; and the boiling of it down, an operation which is also performed in the open air, the operator being at the same time often exposed to the scorching rays of the sun, is also attended with its inconveniencies. When to this is added, that those who at present make it their business to buy up this drug at the Cape, do not give more than two or three stivers a pound for it; and it will not appear remarkable, that the Cape farmers do not think it worth their while to prepare this gum, unless they employ young children or other people, that can do nothing else, about it. "In the winter (*quaade mousson*) the aloe leaves are supposed to contain most juice; on which account, this season is principally chosen for preparing the gum aloe, and particularly fine and calm

days ; as in windy weather the juice coagulates too soon, and cannot run out of the leaves." Vide l. c. The gum thus prepared is yellow when powdered, like any other powdered aloes ; but the thin pieces which are broken off from it, and the edges of even larger pieces, are transparent, seeming as if they were made of a yellowish brown glass. Of course it has nothing of that dark green, cloudy and opaque appearance, exhibited by the other aloes which are to be found in the apothecaries' shops under the denomination of *succotrine* and *hepatic* aloes. This dark colour, which is seen in a great quantity of aloes, probably proceeds from its having been prepared in a method very different from that used at the Cape ; perhaps from the leaves being pressed, by which means a greater quantity of juice indeed is obtained, but then it is full of dregs.

It is true, I have frequently used the gum aloe of the Cape for medical purposes, but cannot take upon me as yet to give it the preference to the more opaque sort ; in the mean time, anxious to explore this drug in divers ways, I got M. JOHN E. JULIN, apothecary at *New Carleby*, to separate from each other the gummy and resinous parts of the gum aloe from the Cape, who found it to contain nearly equal quantities of both these principles.

Near the river *Goree*, above-mentioned, farmer ALOVEN SMIDT, who resided on the banks of that river, had caught a dreadfully venomous lizard, called *geitje*, which he had kept in spirits of wine ; and on the 19th of this month, on my departure from this place, made me a present of it. I had long before this been told by many people, that the bite of this creature would produce a terrible sort of leprosy, which terminated in death, but not till the end of six months or a year, the body in the mean time rotting and falling away piece-meal. This man, however, gave me an instance of a Bugunese slave having, a few years before, been lucky enough to cure a female slave in the neighbourhood, who had already experienced, in a pretty high degree, the effects of the *geitje's* bite. The patient, who had afterward removed to about sixty miles from this place, was supposed to be still alive and in good health ; but the slave, they knew, had

had died with the secret, having never revealed either this or any other of the remedies of which he was in possession to any body. It has been noticed, however, that among other means which he used, he had sometimes dressed the wound with oranges and lemons cut into halves. In the mean time, the matter deserves investigation in different ways. Among other things, animals ought to be exposed to the bite of this serpent, and the effects of oranges and other remedies on the ulcers that would in all probability arise from it, should be tried. It is a lucky circumstance, that the *geitje* is slow in its motions, and not of a very irritable disposition; of course the disorder occasioned by its bite is not common, though the animal itself is common enough in spring, or at least at certain times in the year. We sought for it, however, to no purpose, under the rocks and stones near *Krakeel* river, and in the empty shells of the *bulia achatima* in *Sisfikamma*, (where I was assured by the inhabitants it was very common) when I passed through these places. As the tail is apt to fall off with a slight touch, and is found filled up with a yellow matter, similar to that which is seen in boils and ulcers, and as no nails are discernible in the sample that I brought home with me, it is not probable that the *geitje* is a larva, which is transformed in time into a lizard of a quite different shape and nature? I am not certain, whether I have seen this lizard in life or not; yet I think I recollect, that I caught one of them at the warm bath, and, having wrapped it up in paper, kept it in my pocket; but pulled it out again, through haste and carelessness, together with the wadding of my gun; not being sensible then, what a venomous prize I had in my possession and parted with. I was afterwards told the company at the bath talk of this lizard, though (if I rightly remember) by a different name, being to be found at *Franse-boek*; but I considered the account which they gave of the poisonous quality of this animal, as one of these tales by which I observed they attempted to alarm me, and make me cautious in the course of my journey. The *geitje* which I brought home along with me, is barely three inches long, of which length the tail constitutes the smallest half, and is very peaked; but in the middle it is

almost as thick as the animal's body, which is without scales, and speckled at top with dark spots, and white below, with from twelve to fourteen papillæ on the edge of the lower jaw. There are five toes on each foot. I have given a drawing of the *geitje*, along with a full description of it, in the Transactions of the Gottenburgh Society of Sciences and Belles Lettres, Part I. page 75. Tab. V.

I have already taken notice of a lizard as black as jet of which the Hottentots are much afraid, as being highly venomous.

Having no room within the limits which I have prescribed to myself in this volume, I am obliged to defer the description of the African lizards, together with several other matters, at present, intending to lay them before the public at some future period, in a separate treatise, or by some other opportunity. The following lizard, however, which is by much the largest in the whole colony, and to which I shall give the name of *Lacerta Capensis*, deserves to be at least shortly mentioned, were it only on account of the hardness of its nature, and the difficulty with which I found it could be deprived of life. It is true, it has some distant resemblance to that of SEBA, from Ceylon, Tom. I. Tab. 94. Fig. I. in the rings or girdles with which it is encircled; but it has a much greater number of them, not to mention the remarkable dissimilarity there is between them in respect of colour, which may be collected from the following account of that from the Cape.

“*Lacerta Capensis*, cauda compressa supra carinata, Zonis 16, seu 18, albis totidemque nigris alternantibus annulata, apice nigra. Corpore subsquamoso, superne ex nigro viridique fusco, subtus albido, fasciis 16—18, nigris anomalis notato. Harum 8 circiter Juguli, 9 autem Pectoris Abdominisque regiones occupant.”

One of this species, of a middling size, which, along with its two young ones, I brought home with me from *Agter Brunjes-boogte*, was about two feet in length in the body, and three in the tail; having caught her by the neck, so that she could not bite me, and finding some strength was needed to hold her fast, I got a large worried needle, and gave her several punctures with it,
not

not in the heart only, but in every part of the cranium which was connected with the brain. This, however, was so far from answering my intention, which was to kill her in the most speedy and least painful manner, without mangling or mutilating her, that she seemed still to have sufficient life left to be able to run off. After this my landlord undertook to finish her, and after having given her several hard squeezes around the chest, and tied her feet fast together, he hung her up in a noose by the neck, which he drew as close as he possibly could. From this position she was found in the space of 48 hours after to have extricated herself, though she still continued near the farm, appearing at the same time to be almost wholly exhausted. Upon this, we tied her feet close behind her, so that with her long and sharp claws, of which there were five upon each foot, she could not hurt the serpents and other animals which I kept in a cask of brandy, among which I put her with my own hands, keeping her a long time under the surface of the liquor; yet so far was she from being immediately suffocated by the strength of the liquor, that she flounced about a good deal in it; and even a quarter of an hour thereafter, convinced us by her motions that she had still some remaining life in her. This species of lizard I found was amphibious, living both on water and on land, and also that it grew to a still larger size; consequently it appears to be an extremely long-lived animal, and, both on account of this property, and that of not being killed without great difficulty, to have an important office assigned it in the general system of the œconomy of nature. It was imagined, (and not without reason) by the people with whom I lived, that this creature might easily be tamed, and that it was not of a malignant or venomous nature in any degree.

I have just received from the Cape the fœtus of a very singular quadruped, which has been preserved in spirits, I can therefore give only a short description of it in this place, which may serve as a foundation for farther researches hereafter.

It appeared to be of a dark grey colour, and seven inches and a half in length, measuring from the nose to the anus; in the body, tail, and feet, somewhat resembling

sembling a young whelp, but with a totally different head.

The nose is small and round, two-thirds of an inch long, and projecting strait forwards, so as to form a right angle with the forehead, which is upright, and rounded almost like a man's; and thus in these respects very different from the long-snouted genus of *viverra*, or *weasel* likewise. The mouth, besides, projects in such a manner, that the upper lip forms an acute angle with the nose. Notwithstanding this, the under-lip and the jaw project beyond the upper. The tongue is broad, and round at the point.

Captain ADOLPHUS BURTZ, by whom the cabinet of Natural History belonging to the Royal Academy of Sciences has been enriched with divers rarities from the East-Indies, has made me a present also of this animal, which he had purchased from a countryman at the Cape. This man informed him, that it was to be found in the country around *Saldanha-bay*, and gave him the name of it, which Captain BURTZ took down in writing, but lost the paper; so that this creature appears to be one of the regular and common productions of nature, and no monster.

We came to *Nana-rivier* in the evening. At this time a widow lived here, whose husband had some years before met with the dreadful catastrophe of being beheaded by his own slaves. His son, at that time about 13 or 14 years of age, was forced to be eye-witness to his father's end, and was even threatened to be made a partaker of it, but happily found an opportunity to give them the slip; and after escaping their most vigilant search, hid himself up close from the forenoon till it was dark at night; when at last he ventured out, with a view to seek a more secure asylum at a neighbouring farm, and to accuse his father's murderers. These villians had also resolved to murder the mother, who was expected home from the Cape that day; but luckily for her, though very much to her regret at that time, she was prevented by some accident on the road till the following day. By means of her son, who had escaped, she got advice of what had happened. As all the premises on the farm consisted only of two houses, situated on a plain quite

quite open on every side, only that it was covered with a few straggling bushes, which grew by the side of the little river or brook that ran close by the spot, the lad's scheme to hide himself, though in fact exceeding painful as well as singular, was the only one which could possibly have saved him at this time. It was this, he sat, or rather sank himself up to the nose in the river; being careful at the same time to hide his face behind the boughs which hung over the water. When the murderers could not find him any where, he having as it were wholly vanished from their sight, immediately concluded, that, in order to escape the stroke of the bloody axe, he had rather determined to put an end to his existence himself, by jumping into the river: notwithstanding this, however, they endeavoured to make themselves certain whether he was actually drowned or not. The means they pursued in order to learn this, was to sound the brook all over with the branches of a tree; but they fortunately passed over the particular spot where the boy was sitting, probably because the river in that part was shallower, and the current was considerably brisker.

I should without doubt have brought the tears into the eyes of our entertainers, and thus made them a very bad return for their kindness, had I, by questioning them closely as to the particulars of this story, attempted to satisfy my curiosity so unseasonably. For this reason, I have satisfied myself with taking it down, exactly as I have related it above, from the accounts which Mr IMMELMAN and others gave me; and consequently I could not learn with any certainty, whether the slaves had been provoked by any unusual act of severity of the deceased to commit this crime, by way of revenge; or whether they had acted thus, from a conviction that the same crimes and predatory practices by which violence had been done to their persons, and they had been deprived of their liberties, might likewise be lawfully had recourse to, in order to recover this precious right bestowed on them by nature, and might be consequently very pardonable when exercised on their tyrants.

Yet, to whatever real cause the committing this dreadful crime is to be attributed, I am satisfied, that it takes its origin in the very essence and nature of the slave trade,

trade, in whatever manner and in whatever country it may be practised; a motive which I found had equal influence among the Christians in many places, as among the Turks on the Barbary coast, to cause the unhappy slaves, and still more their tyrannical masters, to behave very strangely; nay, at times to commit the most horrid cruelties. I have known some colonists, not only in the heat of passion, but even deliberately and when in cool blood, execute themselves the mean employment (fit only for an executioner) of not only slaying, for a trifling omission, both the backs and limbs of their slaves, by a particular slow lingering method, but also, exceeding the very tigers in cruelty, throw pepper and salt upon the wounds. But what seemed to me to be still more strange and horrid, was to hear a colonist, not only describe with great apparent satisfaction the whole process of this diabolical invention, but even value himself on the practice of it: and torture his brains, in order to invent sophisms to defend it, and at the same time the slave-trade; in which employment the important office he enjoyed in the colony, and his own interest, had engaged him. He was, moreover, an European by birth; of a free and civilized nation; and, indeed, gave evident proofs that he possessed a kind and tender heart; so that, perhaps, it would be hard to shew any where a greater contradiction in the disposition of man, though in a world consisting almost wholly of contradictions.

I have often seen unhappy slaves, especially in the mornings and evenings, in various places, who with the most doleful cries and lamentations, were suffering the immoderately severe punishments their masters inflicted on them; during which, they are accustomed, as I was told, not so much to beg for mercy, as for a drink of water; but so long as their blood continued inflamed with the pain and torture, it was said that great care must be taken not to allow them the refreshment of any kind of drink; as experience had shewn, that in that case, they would die in the space of a few hours, and sometimes the very moment after they had drank it. The same thing it is said happens to those who are impaled alive, after having been broken on the wheel, or even without

without having previously undergone this punishment. This operation is performed by thrusting up the spike along the back-bone and the vertebrae of the neck, between the skin and the cuticle, in such a manner, that the sufferer is brought into a sitting posture. In this horrid situation, however, they are said to be capable to support life for several days, as long as no rain falls; as in that case, the wet will make their sores mortify, and consequently put an end to their sufferings in a few hours.

I am happy that I had no opportunity, during my residence in the town, of seeing any person suffer this punishment; which, though only appointed for incendiaries, or for those who are guilty of sedition and murder, and that aggravated with particular circumstances of cruelty and barbarity, yet it seems to be no less shocking and revolting to human nature, than the very crimes themselves, and actually irritates more than is generally imagined, the other slaves in the town; whom I have seen compelled to be witnesses even of such public punishments as do not affect the life of the culprit, in order that they might take warning from it. But the slave who is punished for sedition, is always, a martyr in the opinion of his fellow-slaves, suffering for the common cause, and for having supported the dearest rights which nature has bestowed upon them, that is LIBERTY. Wheels, spikes, red-hot pincers, and all the rest of the horrid apparatus made use of by their executioners, will never have the effect of convincing the sufferers of the contrary doctrine; on the contrary, they become still more established in the idea, that they themselves are tyrannized over, and that such of their fellow-slaves as have had the fortitude to take away the lives of their respective tyrants, and prefer death and tortures to basely groveling and crawling any longer on the earth in an ignominious state of bondage, are examples worthy to be imitated, and that at least they deserve to be respected, pitied, and even revenged. The massacre of the Chinese at *Batavia* in 1748, gives still a more dreadful example of the rage and cruelties into which men in general may be hurried by the tyranny of their rulers. Had the Chinese been successful in this insurrection, IMHOFF the governor-general, and M. THEBENS, would have been cut to pieces
and

and devoured. (Vide ADAM VALKENIER, Part XVII.) May we not from hence infer, that oppression and injustice, more than hunger, have given rise to the practice of eating human flesh, which prevails in many parts of the globe?—I have already observed, that the *Bugunese* slaves are in a particular manner strict and scrupulous in administering justice. These slaves are a kind of Mahometans, with a complexion nearly the same as the people of Java, though they are taken upon other islands in the East-Indies. They are not besides of a humour to pocket harsh expressions or abusive language, still less when they do not deserve it, and in no case from a woman; considering it as the greatest shame, to permit themselves to be disciplined by the weaker sex. Many a master and mistress of a family, who have accidentally forgot themselves as to this point, have, when a proper opportunity has offered, been made to pay for this their mistake with their lives. These very slaves, on the contrary, when they know themselves to be in the wrong, are said to return thanks to their master for every stroke he bestows upon them; at the same time commending his justice and rigour, nay even kissing his feet; a circumstance to which I myself have been an eye-witness. In a word, they are said to be capable of bearing the most cruel torments with astonishing fortitude, as if they were entirely without feeling. There have been instances of their not having uttered the smallest cry or complaint when impaled alive, or broken upon the wheel. But if a Bugunese slave should at any time chance to betray the least want of resolution in this point, his countrymen, it is said, feel themselves hurt by it, considering it as a reproach to the whole nation. The female slaves belonging to these people, are said to be extremely constant in love, as also to exact the strictest fidelity from their lovers. In short, the bold and intrepid character of this nation, is the reason that people at the Cape are not fond of burrying them; and that the importation of them is prohibited, though indeed it is practised at times. The slaves from other parts, such as from *Mosambique*, *Madagascar*, *Malabar*, &c. are not so dangerous generally to their unreasonable and tyrannical masters. On account of this great tameness shewn by them, they are more commonly

commonly made to bow beneath the yoke; and the mistress of a family may venture to give as free a scope to all her whims and fancies, with regard to these slaves, as her husband himself. There is a law, indeed, existing in the colonies, which prohibits masters from killing their slaves, or from flogging or otherwise chastizing them with too much severity; but how can a slave go to law with his master, who is, as it were, his sovereign, and who, by the same laws, has a right, (or at least may purchase that right by bribes) to have him flogged at the public whipping-post, not absolutely to death, indeed, yet not far from it; and this solely on the strength of the master's own testimony, and without any farther inquiry into the merits of the case? The master has, besides, so far his slave's life in his hands, that by rating and abusing him day after day, as also by proper family discipline, as it is named, such as heavy iron chains, hard work, and little meat, he may, without controul, by little and little, though soon enough for his purpose, worry the poor fellow out of his life. In consequence of which, the unhappy slaves, who are often endued with finer feelings and nobler sentiments of humanity, though for the most part actuated by stronger passions than their masters, frequently give themselves up wholly to despondency, and commit various acts of desperation and violence. Divers circumstances and considerations may, perhaps, concur to induce a wretch in this situation to exempt his tyrant from the dagger, which he plunges in his own bosom; content with having it in his power to put an end to his misery, and at the same time to disappoint his greedy master of the profits arising from the sweat of his brow. A female slave, who had just been bought at a high price, and rather prematurely treated with severity by her mistress, who lived in the *Roode-zand* district, hanged herself the same night out of revenge and despair, just at the entrance of her new mistress's bed-chamber. A young man and woman who were slaves at the Cape, and were passionately fond of each other, solicited their master, agreeable to the established custom, for his consent to their being united in wedlock, though all in vain, as from some whim or caprice he was induced absolutely to forbid it. The consequence was, that the lo-

ver was seized with a singular fit of despair; and having first plunged a dagger into the heart of the object of his dearest wishes, immediately afterwards put an end to his own life. But how many hundred instances, not less dreadful than these, might be produced to this purpose! These, however, may be sufficient to create all that abhorrence for the slave trade, which so unnatural a species of commerce deserves; we will, therefore, at present dismiss this disagreeable subject.

We set off from *Hex-rivier*, on the 10th, and went by the way of *Roode-zand*, a tract of land of the parrow kind, laid out in vineyards, and almost surrounded with very high mountains. The only road by which it was possible to go from hence to the Cape, went through a long, narrow, and tedious vale, along which part of *Klein-berg* river runs.

On the 12th, having got out of the district of *Roode-zand*, we met with some farmers from *Sneeuw-berg*, who had just been at the Cape. These good people told us, that a large lake had lately been discovered a little to the north of the latter district. Otherwise, there is not another lake to be found in the whole colony.—As far as I could understand them, it was of a species of *cactus* of a considerable size, that they made at Camdebo and other parts in the colony, a kind of brandy, equally good with that which is prepared from grapes or malt. They also told us, that there was a Swedish ship in each of the harbours, *Table-bay* and *Falfe-bay*, and that both of them were supposed to be ready to sail. This piece of information, necessarily caused me to make all the expedition I could to get to the end of my journey.

We arrived at the Cape on the 15th.

APPENDIX.

A P P E N D I X.

Some Account of the MUS PUMILIO, a new Species of RAT, from the Southern Part of AFRICA, lately discovered and described by the Author.

I Found this animal, which hitherto has been wholly unknown to naturalists, in the forests of Sitsikamma, close by Slangen-rivier, two hundred urs to the eastward of the Cape. It is easily distinguished from all the other numerous species of the genus to which it belongs, by the four black lines which run along its back. This rat is represented in the natural size in the figure annexed in Plate VII. of this volume, being drawn from a sample which I have presented to the Museum of the Swedish Academy: and, as it appears to have attained to its full size, the *mus pumilio*, or *dwarf mouse*, may certainly contend with the *mus minutus* and *mus betulinus* of M. PALLAS for the palm, of being the smallest quadruped in the whole world. The specimen I have now in my possession, though impregnated with the spirits in which it is preserved, weighs only four scruples: of course, when compared with the gigantic quadrupeds existing in the same quarter of the globe, and of which I have given descriptions as well in the Swedish Transactions as in the preceding journal, it forms with them a striking contrast. Compared with the hippopotamus, for instance, an animal which is seventeen or eighteen French feet long, and at least six in diameter, the *mus pumilio* is but $\frac{1}{17000}$ th of the size of the former, considering the bulk of this latter as being equal to a cubical mass an inch and a quarter in length, and half an inch in diameter.

D E S C R I P T I O.

Corpus tenue, compressiusculum. Color Velleris in genere fusco-cinereus; Frontis & nucha niger. Lineæ quatuor dorsales, longitudinales nigrae: Harum duo inter-
Y 2
media,

media, & in nucha & ad basin caudæ in unum coalescunt; duo exteriores a nucha, paulloque pone aures ortæ, sibi invicem parallellæ, ad basin usque caudæ fere extenduntur. Regiones utriusque oculi & narium pallidæ. Pedes antiqui & postici quinque-dactyli, anticorum pollicibus minutis, conspicue tamen unguiculatis. Cauda longitudine ½ corporis, nudiuscula, pallida.



SPECIMEN

MUSEUM
740923

SECRET

SPECIMEN OF THE LANGUAGE OF THE
HOTTENTOTS.

Numerals.

One, <i>Ui.</i>	Four, <i>t'Hacka.</i>
Two, <i>t'Kammi.</i>	Five, <i>t'Gifi.</i>
Three, <i>t'Knona.</i>	Six, <i>t'Golo.</i>

Parts of the Body and Clothing.

Hair, <i>t'Kum.</i>	Nails, <i>t'Kaloqua.</i>
Nose, <i>t'Koi.</i>	Finger, <i>t'Naniqua.</i>
Eye, <i>Mo.</i>	Stomach, <i>t'Amfa.</i>
Ear, <i>t'Nunqua.</i>	Tail, <i>Sofie.</i>
Tooth, <i>t'O.</i>	Penis, <i>t'Ka.</i>
Teeth, <i>t'Kong.</i>	Caput penis, <i>t'Ora.</i>
Lip, <i>t'Gamma.</i>	Vulva, <i>t'Gau.</i>
Hand, <i>t'Unka.</i>	Apron, <i>t'Netie.</i>
Leg, <i>t'Nu.</i>	Hat, <i>t'Aba.</i>
Stocking, <i>t'Nus Tanka.</i>	Shoes, <i>t'Noaka.</i>

Men's Ages and Conditions in Life.

Father, <i>Bo.</i>	Younger sister, <i>t'Kanga.</i>
——, <i>t'O.</i>	Young girl, <i>Trakofi.</i>
Elder brother, <i>t'Ai.</i>	Girl, <i>t'Gos.</i>
Younger brother, <i>t'Kana.</i>	Lad, <i>t'Go.</i>
Mother, <i>Mama.</i>	Slave, <i>Kobbo.</i>
——, <i>Saufi.</i>	Master, Master of the house,
Parents, <i>Sanna.</i>	<i>t'Kukoi.</i>
Elder sister, <i>t'Kaes.</i>	

The Names of Animals and their Properties.

Tiger, <i>Kassau.</i>	Tortoise, <i>t'Gammi.</i>
Wolf, <i>Guka.</i>	Elk, <i>t'Kan.</i>
——, <i>Nuka.</i>	Roebuok, <i>Za.</i>
Elephant, <i>Coa.</i>	Steenbock, <i>Gunima.</i>
Dog, <i>Tu.</i>	Jackal, <i>d'Intai.</i>
Dogs, <i>Tuna.</i>	Zebra, <i>d'Au.</i>
Penis of a dog, <i>Tuna-ka.</i>	Horse, <i>Hanqua.</i>
Bitch, <i>Tus.</i>	Stallion, <i>Karangaba.</i>
Lion, <i>t'Gamma.</i>	Mare, <i>Abas.</i>

Fish, <i>'Gau.</i>	Bull, <i>Ho.</i>
Buffalo, <i>'Kau.</i>	Baboon, <i>'Gorola.</i>
Sea-cow, <i>'Gao.</i>	Bee, <i>Oi.</i>
Hog, <i>Hango.</i>	Honey, <i>Diini.</i>
Horned Cattle, <i>'Guku.</i>	Milk, <i>Bi.</i>
Sheep, <i>'Gus.</i>	Fat, <i>'Nai.</i>
Cow, <i>'Goos.</i>	Flesh, <i>'Go.</i>
Bull, <i>Hara.</i>	

Substantives not reducible to the former heads, Adjectives, Adverbs, Pronouns and Phrases.

Thunder, <i>'Guku.</i>	Cold, <i>Oro.</i>
Fire, <i>'Eis.</i>	Yes, <i>Io.</i>
Wood, <i>'E.</i>	No, <i>Aa.</i>
Bread, <i>Bra.</i>	Thine, <i>Ta.</i>
Pipe, <i>'Nov.</i>	Thy Horse, <i>Ta Hanqua.</i>
Terra firma, <i>Houtniqua.</i>	Whose, which, <i>Danne.</i>
Washing-river, <i>'Kam t'nasi.</i>	Who is come? <i>'Danne koba.</i>
Water, <i>'Kamma.</i>	Who lives here? <i>'Danne koba be.</i>
House, <i>'Kooqua.</i>	Our father, <i>Zika Ba.</i>
Road, <i>Dau.</i>	—, <i>Ty t'ka.</i>
Bad road, <i>Tradau.</i>	I, <i>Tiri.</i>
—, <i>Tudau.</i>	—Tili.
Good road, <i>Skundaba.</i>	—Fæmininum, <i>Tuti.</i>
Callibash, <i>Karabu.</i>	Thou, <i>Tats.</i>
Waggon, <i>Krobe.</i>	She, <i>Tatifi?</i>
Good, <i>Huka.</i>	He, <i>Hekoe.</i>
Better, <i>Oin.</i>	Ye, <i>Zita.</i>
—, <i>Hahagua Karin.</i>	They, <i>Hekoina.</i>
Bad, ugly, <i>Kaifi.</i>	Will you have any bread?
Sick, <i>Kaifin.</i>	<i>Tats Bra.</i>
What belongs to you is good for nothing, <i>Zgu kaifi.</i>	
Angry, <i>Solo.</i>	<i>Sas Bra.</i>
Why, or with whom are you angry? <i>Solo naba.</i>	

Verbs Active and Neuter, with some Examples of them in Phrases.

I am, <i>Titte.</i>	We are, <i>Zikatifi.</i>
Thou art, <i>Kia.</i>	We are there, <i>Zikatifi inaba.</i>
He is, <i>Oi.</i>	He is there, <i>Dan inaba.</i>

To

APPENDIX

To come, <i>Ha.</i>	To sleep, <i>'Kae.</i>
Come hither, <i>Here ha.</i>	I am sleepy, <i>Tallika-hu.</i>
Come quickly, <i>Sa-ha.</i>	The bell, <i>Zai.</i>
Do not come, <i>Ho-gu.</i>	The water boils, <i>Danda.</i>
To do, <i>Hi.</i>	Truth, it is true, <i>Kamase.</i>
To give, <i>Male.</i>	To lie, it is false, <i>Eige.</i>
Give me, <i>Male gu.</i>	It is fine weather, <i>'Oroa.</i>
Give fire, <i>'Ei mare.</i>	It rains, <i>'Uhai.</i>
Give milk, <i>Bi mare.</i>	Remember me to your family, <i>'Kakebare.</i>
Order me some drink, <i>Ereka.</i>	Good day! <i>'Abe.</i>
Give victuals, <i>'Kaka mare.</i>	Farewell!
To eat, <i>'Knu.</i>	Good day, Master! <i>'Abe</i>
I wish to eat, <i>'Knu, ha-tiri.</i>	<i>'kukoi.</i>
I am hungry, <i>Tirihola-nabui.</i>	To steal, <i>'Sa.</i>
Having one's fill, or one's belly full, <i>Ele tehae.</i>	To kill, <i>'Nauham.</i>
To lie down, or lie along, <i>'Koe.</i>	A draught, <i>'Ka.</i>
	To drink, <i>'Ka.</i>
	Here, take it! <i>'Kae.</i>
	See there! hold fast! <i>'Kae.</i>

N. B. t' Prefixed to a word, indicates that the syllable immediately following is to be pronounced with a *clack*, or application of the tongue to the roof of the mouth; this appears to me to be effected, according to the different dialects used, the different emotions of the speaker, or the different subjects spoken of, with various degrees of force in one and the same word; and, indeed, sometimes to be altogether omitted.

Specimen of the Language of the Snese, or Chinese-Hottentots.

One, <i>'Koa.</i>	Water, <i>'Kae.</i>
Two, <i>Tinnano.</i>	Flesh, <i>'Goa.</i>
Three, <i>Tinnankaita.</i>	Abusive language, <i>'Koago.</i>
Four, <i>Tinnanonaka.</i>	Lion, <i>'Kalo.</i>
He, <i>'Natko.</i>	Tiger, <i>'Abe.</i>
Fire, <i>'Ei.</i>	Good day! <i>'Ave.</i>

N. B.

N. B. I did not meet with any of this nation that could reckon farther than four. Notwithstanding which, such of them as are shepherds in the service of the Christians, are said to discover much sooner than their masters, when any one of the sheep in the numerous flocks committed to their care, is missing or lost.

It should farther be observed, that it is only the words denoting *fire* and *flesh*, and the term used in mutual salutations, that bear any resemblance to each other in the two preceding languages.

Specimen of the Language of the Caffres.

To reckon, <i>Sium</i> .	The Sun, <i>Lelanga</i> .
One, <i>Enje</i> .	The Moon, <i>Janga</i> .
Two, <i>Babini</i> .	Rain, <i>Evula</i> .
Three, <i>A-tatu</i> .	Ox, <i>Gomo</i> .
Four, <i>Sanu</i> .	Horse, <i>Hanshi</i> .
Five, <i>Sumenini</i> .	Lion, <i>Elepbo</i> .
Six, <i>Sinje</i> .	Buffalo, <i>Eujata</i> .
Ten, <i>Sumi</i> .	Jackal, <i>Pangalia</i> .
A Hundred, <i>Enkutu</i> .	Elk, <i>Poffo</i> .
Father, <i>Bao</i> .	Dog, <i>Sefuja</i> .
Mother, <i>Mau</i> .	To give, —.
A Man, <i>Doda</i> .	A Road, <i>Ufala</i> .
A Woman, <i>Ufasi</i> .	—, <i>Enezela</i> .
Two Brothers, <i>Emkulo</i> .	A sick Person, <i>Jassa</i> .
Cousins, <i>Umsala</i> .	One that is dead, <i>Ufile</i> .
Kindred, <i>Sinlobo Tetu</i> .	The Ear, <i>Sila</i> .
Friend, <i>Eklobo</i> .	Handsome, <i>Opepile</i> .
Hand, <i>Fansa</i> .	Angry, <i>Siala</i> .
Finger, <i>Aene</i> .	Great, <i>Entue nune</i> .
Thumb, <i>Umino</i> .	Little, <i>Nonane</i> .
Arm, <i>Enkomo</i> .	Javelin, <i>Hassagai, Emkan-</i>
Thigh, <i>Mulemfe</i> .	<i>gota</i> .
Foot, <i>Enjau</i> .	Knife, <i>Sjbatse</i> .
Toes, <i>Emauffani</i> .	Waggon, <i>Nolo</i> .
Head, <i>Loko</i> .	Copper, Brass, <i>Emfibemfopi</i> .
Water, <i>Maafi</i> .	Glass Beads, <i>Sintela</i> .
Milk, <i>Animafi</i> .	Small red Glass Beads,
Fire, <i>Lilo</i> .	<i>Lenkitenka</i> .

More !

APPENDIX.

More! Give more! <i>Ungeesa.</i> It is too little, <i>Ninneneni.</i> Good Day, <i>Echiote.</i> To dance, <i>Ufino.</i> Come hither, <i>Ifat.</i> Run! Haste! <i>Harden.</i>	To sleep, <i>Gualala.</i> To awaken, <i>Vuka.</i> To wake, <i>—</i> No! <i>Haij.</i> Yes! <i>Aoe.</i> Far away, <i>Kude.</i>
---	--

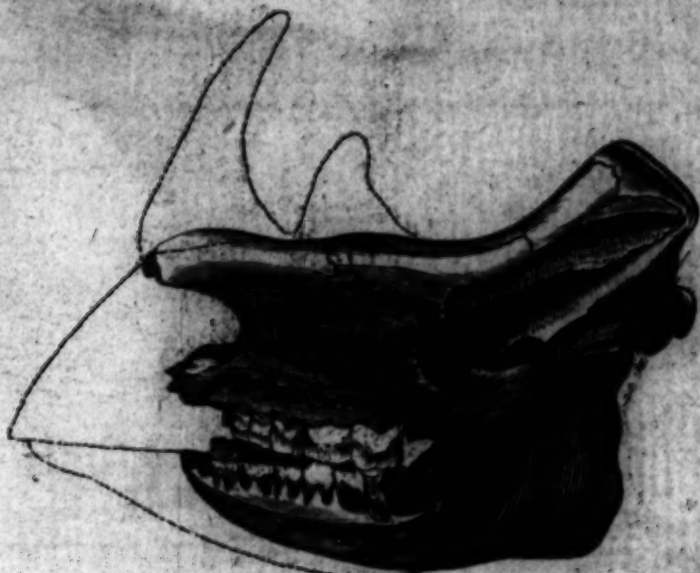
N. B. The Caffres do not make a noise with their tongue against the roof of their mouths in speaking, as the Hottentots do, but pronounce their words in a manly and distinct manner, mostly with a strong accent on the penultimate.



DIRECTIONS TO THE BOOK-BINDER.

The Quarto Landscape to be placed as Frontispiece of Volume first.

The other Plates to be placed at the end of the respective Volumes: the Chart placed at the last of those in the first Volume.



—AIR—
Sung by the Hottentots near little Sunday River
(Vide Page 21 of Volume II.^d)



RHINOCEROS BICORNIS.

Blizars Sculp.



Heartbeast

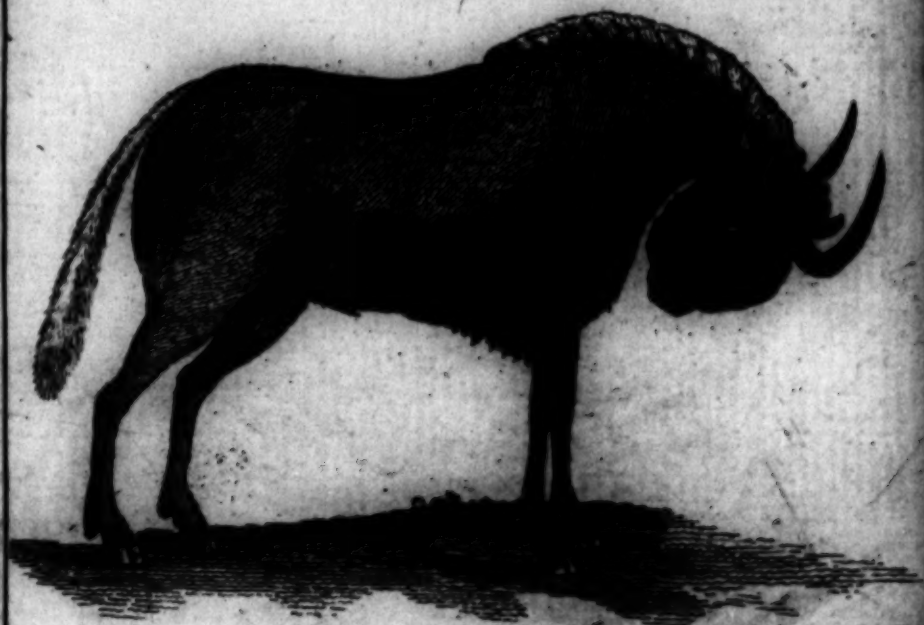


Elk. Antelope





Gnus



Buffalo

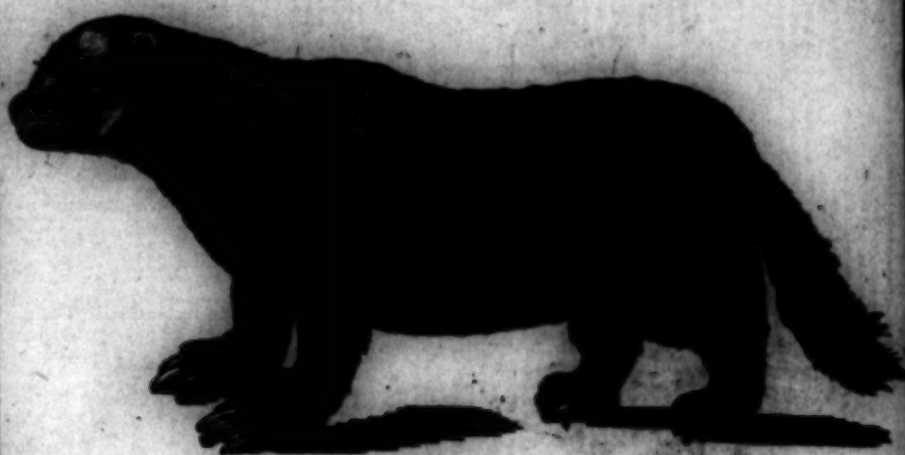






SPRINGER. OR SPRING-BOK. D. L. S. & Co. Sculp.





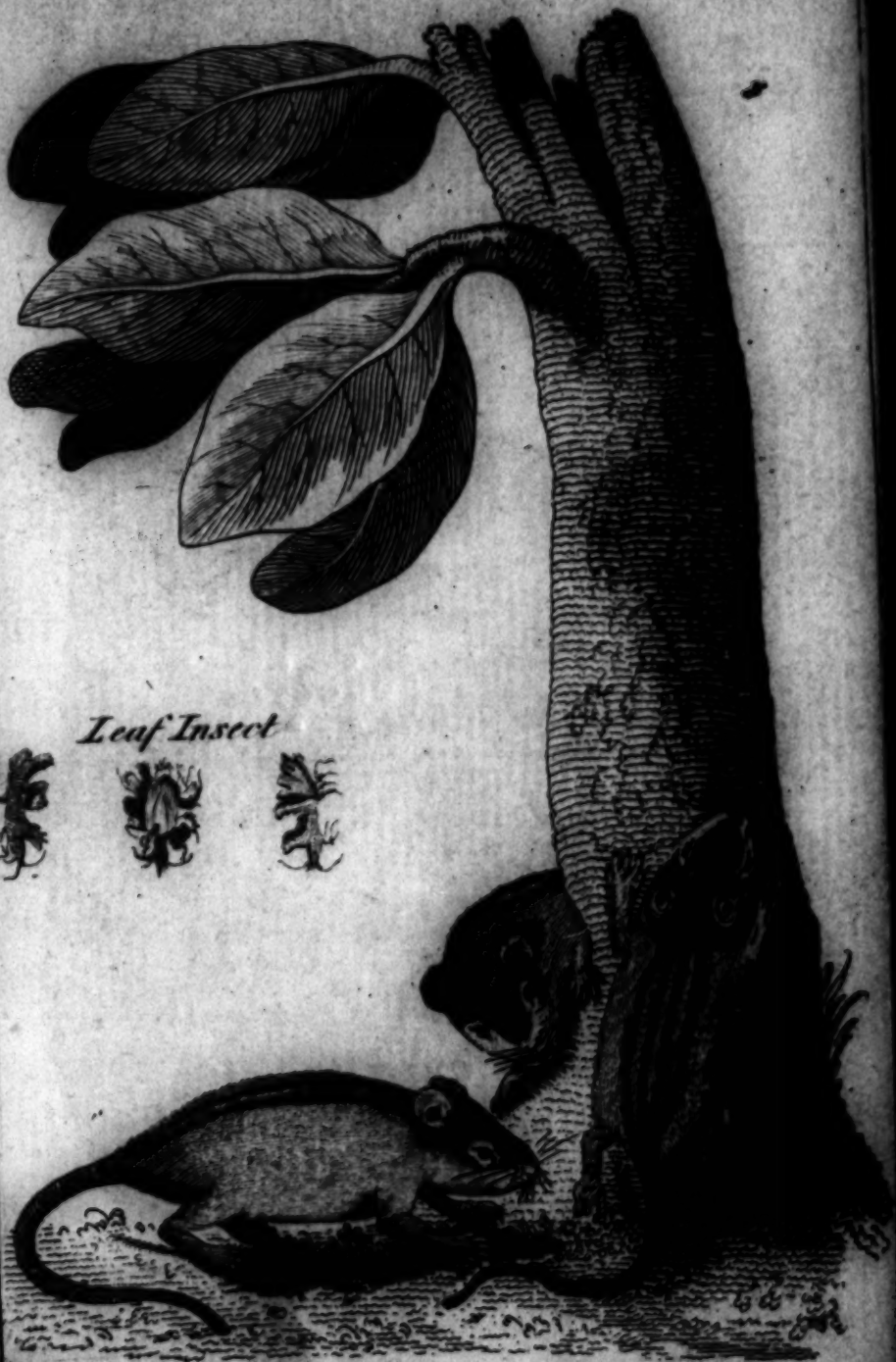
VIVERRA RATEL.



WOOD GOAT.

Stevens. Sculp.

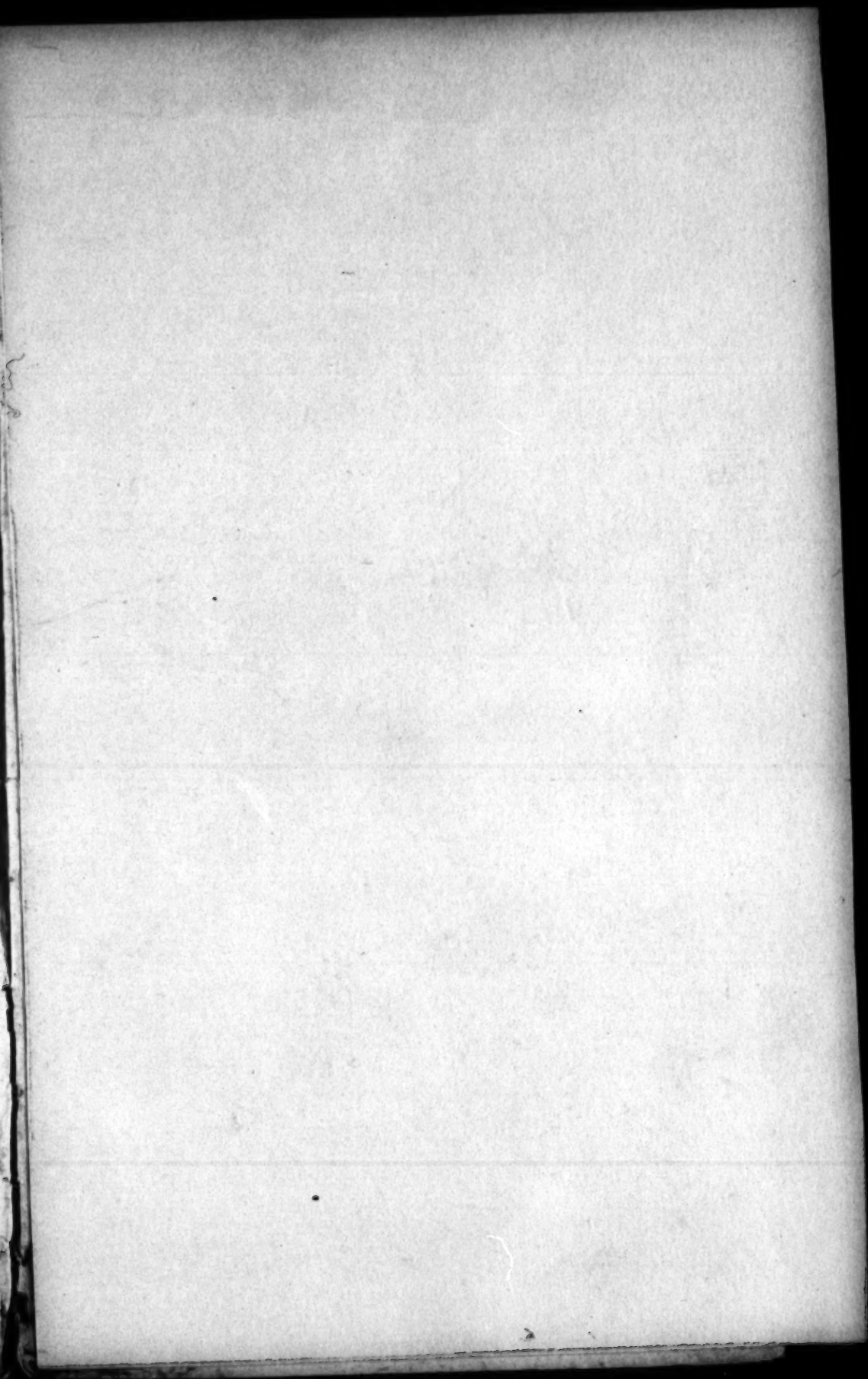




Leaf Insect

Dwarf Mice





YCAT.



HYPERBARIUS

Edwards Sculp.





